



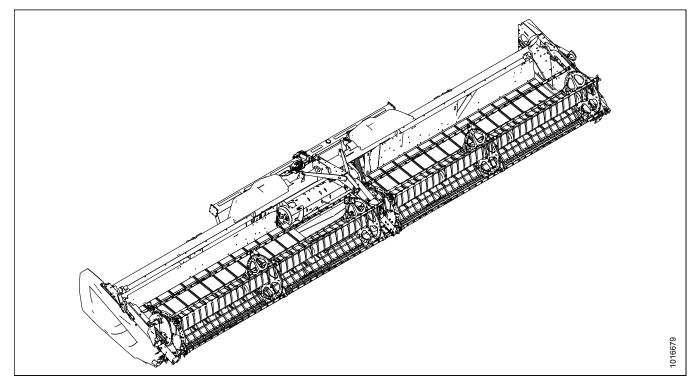
FD1 Series FlexDraper[®] Combine Header with FM100 Float Module

Unloading and Assembly Instructions (North America) 214685 Revision A Original Instruction

Featuring MacDon FLEX-FLOAT Technology™

The harvesting specialists.

FD1 Series FlexDraper® Header



Published: June 2018

Introduction

This instruction manual describes the unloading, setup, and predelivery requirements for the MacDon FD1 Series FlexDraper® Combine Header with FM100 Float Module.

To ensure the best performance of this product and the safety of your customers, carefully follow the unload and assembly procedure from the beginning through to completion.

Carefully read all the material provided before attempting to unload, assemble, or use the machine.

Retain this instruction for future reference.

NOTE:

Keep your MacDon publications up-to-date. The latest version can be downloaded from our website (*www.macdon.com*) or from our Dealer portal (*https://portal.macdon.com*) (login required).

List of Revisions

| Summary of Change | Refer To |
|--|---|
| Added procedures. | 2.4 Removing Endshields from Shipping Position – FD145 Headers, page 14 |
| | Replacing Float Indicator Cable, page 166 |
| | Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series), page 219 |
| | Adjusting Auto Reel Height (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series), page 221 |
| | • 9.1.3 Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 323 |
| Revised illustrations of the auger drum. | • 4.2.1 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration or Narrow Configuration to Medium Configuration, page 36 |
| | 4.2.2 Converting from Wide Configuration to Medium Configuration, page 38 |
| | • 4.2.3 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Narrow Configuration, page 40 |
| | • 4.2.4 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration to Narrow Configuration, page 42 |
| | • 4.2.5 Converting from Medium Configuration to Wide Configuration, page 43 |
| | • 4.2.6 Converting from Ultra Narrow or Narrow Configuration to Wide Configuration, page 45 |
| | • 4.2.7 Optional Modification to Wide Configuration, page 46 |
| | • 4.2.8 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration, page 47 |
| | • 4.2.9 Converting from Narrow Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration, page 51 |
| Removed bundle B6215 from flighting kit options. | • 4.2.1 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration or Narrow Configuration to Medium Configuration, page 36 |
| | 4.2.2 Converting from Wide Configuration to Medium Configuration, page 38 |
| | • 4.2.6 Converting from Ultra Narrow or Narrow Configuration to Wide Configuration, page 45 |
| Removed bundle B6216 from flighting kit options. | • 4.2.3 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Narrow Configuration, page 40 |

| Updated center reel image and updated torque value. | 4.2.8 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration, page 47 4.2.9 Converting from Narrow Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration, page 51 6.9 Centering Reel, page 116 |
|--|--|
| Revised the high voltage limit adjustment instruction. | Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162 |
| Added note at the beginning of each procedure. | Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 5088/6088/7088), page 170 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software), page 191 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series), page 294 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR Series), page 306 Setting up the Header on the Combine Display |
| Added settings specific to the two-sensor system. | (Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140), page 173 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240), page 187 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software), page 191 |
| Added note at the start and end of each procedure about setting float. | Calibrating Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140), page 177 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240), page 187 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Challenger and Massey Ferguson), page 200 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series), page 226 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 60 Series), page 248 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 70 Series), page 257 |

| | Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere S and T Series), page 264 Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 500 Series), page 205 |
|---|---|
| Added settings for HEIGHT/TILT RESPONSE and AUTO HEIGHT OVERRIDE. | Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software), page 191 |
| Removed topic Attaching Reel Height Sensor as this is already attached. | _ |

| Introduction | i |
|---|----|
| Chapter 1: Safety | 1 |
| 1.1 Signal Words | 1 |
| 1.2 General Safety | 2 |
| 1.3 Safety Signs | 4 |
| Chapter 2: Unloading | 5 |
| 2.1 Unloading Header and Float Module from Trailer | 5 |
| 2.2 Lowering Header | 7 |
| 2.3 Removing Shipping Stands | 10 |
| 2.4 Removing Endshields from Shipping Position – FD145 Headers | 14 |
| Chapter 3: Assembling Header and Float Module | 17 |
| 3.1 Attaching Reel Lift Cylinders | 17 |
| 3.2 Attaching Cam Arms | 24 |
| 3.3 Repositioning Gearbox | |
| 3.4 Installing Driveline | |
| Chapter 4: Setting up Float Module | |
| 4.1 Installing Filler Cap | |
| 4.2 Float Module Feed Auger Configurations | |
| 4.2.1 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration or Narrow Configuration to Medium Configuration | |
| 4.2.2 Converting from Wide Configuration to Medium Configuration | |
| 4.2.3 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Narrow Configuration | 40 |
| 4.2.4 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration to Narrow Configuration | 42 |
| 4.2.5 Converting from Medium Configuration to Wide Configuration | 43 |
| 4.2.6 Converting from Ultra Narrow or Narrow Configuration to Wide Configuration | |
| 4.2.7 Optional Modification to Wide Configuration | 46 |
| 4.2.8 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration | 17 |
| 4.2.9 Converting from Narrow Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration | |
| 4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers | |
| 4.2.11 Removing Feed Auger Fingers | |
| 4.3 Float Module Stripper Bars and Feed Deflectors | |
| 4.3.1 Removing Stripper Bars | |
| 4.3.2 CR Feeder Deflectors | |
| 4.3.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines | 59 |
| Chapter 5: Attaching Header to Combine | 61 |
| 5.1 AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines | 61 |
| 5.1.1 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Selector Switch and Harness | 61 |
| 5.1.2 Attaching Header to a Challenger, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson Combine | 64 |

| | 69 |
|--|---|
| 5.2.1 Attaching Header to Case IH Combine | 69 |
| 5.3 John Deere Combines | |
| 5.3.1 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Switch: S and T Series Combines | |
| 5.3.2 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Switch: 60 and 70 Series Combines | |
| 5.3.3 Attaching Header to John Deere Combine | |
| 5.4 CLAAS Combines | |
| 5.4.1 Attaching Header to CLAAS Combine | |
| 5.5 New Holland Combines | |
| 5.5.1 Attaching Header to New Holland CR/CX Combine | |
| 5.6 Completing the Header Assembly | |
| 5.6.1 Removing Shipping Supports | |
| 5.6.2 Positioning Transport Lights | |
| 5.6.3 Crop Dividers Removing Crop Dividers from Storage | |
| Opening Endshields | |
| Installing Crop Divider without Latch Option | |
| Installing Crop Divider with Latch Option Closing Endshields | |
| Installing Crop Divider Rods | |
| 5.6.4 Installing Options | |
| Chapter 6: Performing Predelivery Checks | |
| 6.1 Recording Model and Serial Number | |
| 6.2 Checking Tire Pressure: Transport and Stabilizer Wheels | 107 |
| | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque | |
| | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs | |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs | 108 109 111 112 112 113 114 114 115 115 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard | 108 109 111 112 113 113 114 115 115 116 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard 6.9 Centering Reel | 108 109 111 112 112 113 113 114 115 115 115 116 117 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard 6.9 Centering Reel 6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float | 108 109 111 112 112 113 114 115 115 115 116 117 122 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Nife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs | 108 109 111 112 112 113 114 115 115 115 115 116 117 122 122 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard 6.9 Centering Reel 6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float 6.11 Checking and Adjusting Header Wing Balance 6.11.1 Checking Wing Balance | 108 109 111 112 112 113 114 115 115 115 116 117 122 122 122 128 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard 6.9 Centering Reel 6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float 6.11 Checking and Adjusting Header Wing Balance 6.11.1 Checking Wing Balance 6.11.2 Adjusting Wing Balance 6.12 Measuring and Adjusting Reel Clearance to Cutterbar 6.12.1 Measuring Reel Clearance | 108 109 111 112 113 114 115 115 115 116 117 122 122 122 128 128 131 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque | 108 109 111 112 113 114 115 115 115 116 117 122 122 122 128 128 131 |
| 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard 6.9 Centering Reel 6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float 6.11 Checking and Adjusting Header Wing Balance 6.11.1 Checking Wing Balance 6.11.2 Adjusting Wing Balance 6.12 Measuring and Adjusting Reel Clearance to Cutterbar 6.12.1 Measuring Reel Clearance | 108 109 111 112 113 114 115 115 115 115 116 117 122 122 122 128 128 131 131 |

| 6.15 Checking Draper Seal | 140 |
|--|-----|
| 6.16 Lubricating the Header | 142 |
| 6.16.1 Greasing Procedure | |
| 6.16.2 Lubrication Points | |
| 6.17 Checking and Adjusting Endshields | |
| 6.18 Checking Manuals | |
| 6.18 Checking Manuals | 153 |
| Chapter 7: Setting up Auto Header Height Control | 155 |
| 7.1 Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) | 155 |
| 7.1.1 Sensor Operation | 156 |
| 7.1.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements | 157 |
| 10 Volt Adapter (MD #B6421) – New Holland Combines Only | |
| Manually Checking Voltage Range: One-Sensor System | 158 |
| Manually Checking Voltage Range: Two-Sensor System | 160 |
| Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System | |
| Adjusting Voltage Limits: Two-Sensor System | |
| Replacing the Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) Sensor (One-Sensor System) | |
| Replacing Float Indicator Cable | |
| 7.1.3 Case IH 5088/6088/7088 Combines | |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 5088/6088/7088) | |
| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height (Case IH 5088/6088/7088) | |
| 7.1.4 Case IH 5130/6130/7130 and 5140/6140/7140 Mid-Range Combines | 173 |
| Setting up the Header on the Combine Display (Case IH 5130/6130/7130; | |
| 5140/6140/7140) | 173 |
| Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab (Case IH 5130/6130/7130; | 475 |
| 5140/6140/7140) Calibrating Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140) | |
| Setting Preset Cutting Height (Case 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140) | |
| | |
| 7.1.5 Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230 and 7240/8240/9240 Combines Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Case 8010) | |
| Setting Header Controls (Case 8010) | |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, | 105 |
| 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240) | 185 |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, | |
| 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240) | 187 |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher | |
| Software) | |
| Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (Case IH) | 195 |
| Setting Preset Cutting Height (Case 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, | |
| 7240/8240/9240) | |
| 7.1.6 Challenger and Massey Ferguson 6 and 7 Series Combines | |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Challenger and Massey Ferguson) | |
| Engaging the Auto Header Height Control (Challenger and Massey Ferguson) | |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Challenger and Massey Ferguson) | |
| Adjusting the Header Height (Challenger and Massey Ferguson) | |
| Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate (Challenger and Massey Ferguson) | |
| Massey Ferguson) | 204 |
| | |
| 7.1.7 CLAAS 500 Series Combines Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 500 Series) | |
| Setting Cutting Height (CLAAS 500 Series) | |
| | |

| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 500 Series) Adjusting Auto Reel Speed (CLAAS 500 Series) | |
|--|-----|
| 7.1.8 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines | |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series) | |
| Setting Cutting Height (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series) | |
| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series) | |
| Adjusting Auto Reel Speed (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series) | |
| Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series) | |
| Adjusting Auto Reel Height (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series) | |
| 7.1.9 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines | |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series) | |
| Engaging the Auto Header Height Control (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 | |
| S Series) | 224 |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series) | 226 |
| Turning off the Accumulator (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series) | |
| Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 | |
| S Series) | 228 |
| Adjusting Ground Pressure (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series) | 228 |
| Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) (Gleaner | |
| R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series) | 229 |
| Troubleshooting Alarms and Diagnostic Faults (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 | |
| S Series) | 230 |
| 7.1.10 Gleaner S9 Series Combines | 232 |
| Setting up the Header (Gleaner S9 Series) | 232 |
| Setting up Reel Settings (Gleaner S9 Series) | 237 |
| Setting up Automatic Header Controls (Gleaner S9 Series) | 239 |
| Calibrating the Header (Gleaner S9 Series) | |
| Operating Header (Gleaner S9 Series) | |
| Header In-Field Settings | 245 |
| 7.1.11 John Deere 60 Series Combines | 246 |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere 60 Series) | 246 |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 60 Series) | 248 |
| Turning the Accumulator Off (John Deere 60 Series) | |
| Setting the Sensing Grain Header Height to 50 (John Deere 60 Series) | |
| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 60 Series) | |
| Adjusting the Threshold for the Drop Rate Valve (John Deere 60 Series) | 253 |
| 7.1.12 John Deere 70 Series Combines | 254 |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere 70 Series) | 254 |
| Calibrating Feeder House Speed (John Deere 70 Series) | 257 |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 70 Series) | 257 |
| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 70 Series) | |
| Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate (John Deere 70 Series) | 260 |
| 7.1.13 John Deere S and T Series Combines | 261 |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S and T Series) | 261 |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere S and T Series) | 264 |
| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere S and T Series) | 267 |
| Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate (John Deere S and T Series) | 268 |
| Setting Preset Cutting Height (John Deere S and T Series) | |
| Calibrating Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Range (John Deere S and T Series) | |
| Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (John Deere S and T Series) | |
| Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (John Deere S and T Series) | 276 |

| 7.1.14 John Deere S7 Series Combines | |
|---|--------------------------|
| Setting up Header (John Deere S7 Series) | |
| Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S7 Series) | |
| Calibrating Feeder House (John Deere S7 Series) Calibrating Header (John Deere S7 Series) | |
| | |
| 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year) Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (New Holland) | |
| Setting up Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series) | |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series) | |
| Adjusting Header Raise Rate (New Holland CR/CX Series) | |
| Setting the Header Lower Rate (New Holland CR/CX Series) | |
| Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series) | |
| Setting Preset Cutting Height (New Holland CR/CX Series) | |
| 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later) Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (New Holland CR Series) | |
| Setting up Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR Series) | |
| Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR Series) | |
| Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (New Holland) | |
| Setting Preset Cutting Height (New Holland CR Series – 2015 and Later) | |
| Setting Maximum Work Height (New Holland CR Series) | |
| Configuring Reel Fore-Aft, Header Tilt, and Header Type (New Holland CR Series) | |
| Chapter 8: Setting up Reel Height Sensor | |
| 8.1 Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor | |
| | |
| Chapter 9: Running up Header | |
| 9.1 Performing Post Run-Up Adjustments | |
| 9.1.1 Adjusting Knife | |
| 9.1.2 Adjusting Knife Speed | |
| 9.1.3 Adjusting Feed Draper Tension | |
| Chapter 10: Reference | 225 |
| • | |
| 10.1 Torque Specifications | |
| 10.1.1 Metric Bolt Specifications | |
| 10.1.2 Metric Bolt Specifications Bolting into Cast Aluminum | |
| 10.1.2 Elara Tupa Uudraulia Eittinga | |
| 10.1.3 Flare-Type Hydraulic Fittings | |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) | |
| | |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) | |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) 10.1.5 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Non-Adjustable) | |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) 10.1.5 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Non-Adjustable) 10.1.6 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings | 331 332 333 |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) 10.1.5 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Non-Adjustable) 10.1.6 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings 10.1.7 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings | 331 332 333 334 |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) 10.1.5 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Non-Adjustable) 10.1.6 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings 10.1.7 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings 10.2 Lifting Equipment Requirements | |
| 10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable) | |

Chapter 1: Safety

1.1 Signal Words

Three signal words, **DANGER**, **WARNING**, and **CAUTION**, are used to alert you to hazardous situations. Signal words are selected using the following guidelines:

Indicates an imminently hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation that, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may be used to alert against unsafe practices.

1.2 General Safety

The following are general farm safety precautions that should be part of your operating procedure for all types of machinery.

Protect yourself.

- When assembling, operating, and servicing machinery, wear all protective clothing and personal safety devices that could be necessary for job at hand. Do **NOT** take chances. You may need the following:
 - Hard hat
 - Protective footwear with slip-resistant soles
 - Protective glasses or goggles
 - Heavy gloves
 - Wet weather gear
 - Respirator or filter mask
- Be aware that exposure to loud noises can cause hearing impairment or loss. Wear suitable hearing protection devices such as earmuffs or earplugs to help protect against loud noises.

- Provide a first aid kit for use in case of emergencies.
- Keep a fire extinguisher on the machine. Be sure fire extinguisher is properly maintained. Be familiar with its proper use.
- Keep young children away from machinery at all times.
- Be aware that accidents often happen when Operator is tired or in a hurry. Take time to consider safest way. Never ignore warning signs of fatigue.

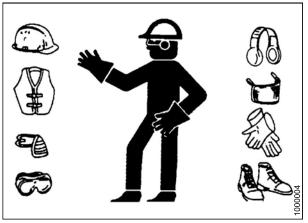


Figure 1.1: Safety Equipment



Figure 1.2: Safety Equipment

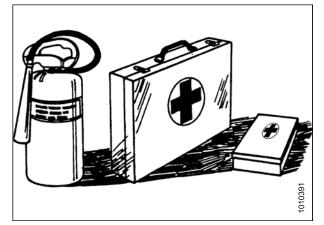


Figure 1.3: Safety Equipment

- Wear close-fitting clothing and cover long hair. Never wear dangling items such as scarves or bracelets.
- Keep all shields in place. **NEVER** alter or remove safety equipment. Make sure driveline guards can rotate independently of shaft and can telescope freely.
- Use only service and repair parts made or approved by equipment manufacturer. Substituted parts may not meet strength, design, or safety requirements.
- Keep hands, feet, clothing, and hair away from moving parts. **NEVER** attempt to clear obstructions or objects from a machine while engine is running.
- Do NOT modify machine. Unauthorized modifications may impair machine function and/or safety. It may also shorten machine's life.
- To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, **ALWAYS** stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.
- Keep service area clean and dry. Wet or oily floors are slippery. Wet spots can be dangerous when working with electrical equipment. Be sure all electrical outlets and tools are properly grounded.
- Keep work area well lit.
- Keep machinery clean. Straw and chaff on a hot engine is a fire hazard. Do **NOT** allow oil or grease to accumulate on service platforms, ladders, or controls. Clean machines before storage.
- NEVER use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.
- When storing machinery, cover sharp or extending components to prevent injury from accidental contact.



Figure 1.4: Safety around Equipment

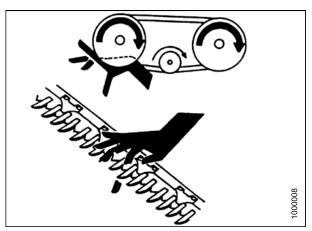


Figure 1.5: Safety around Equipment



Figure 1.6: Safety around Equipment

1.3 Safety Signs

- Keep safety signs clean and legible at all times.
- Replace safety signs that are missing or illegible.
- If original part on which a safety sign was installed is replaced, be sure repair part also bears current safety sign.
- Safety signs are available from your MacDon Dealer.

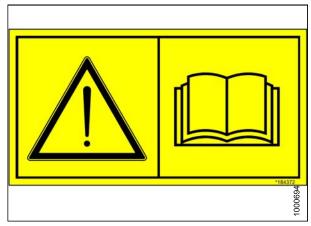


Figure 1.7: Operator's Manual Decal

4

Chapter 2: Unloading

Perform all procedures in this chapter in the order they are listed.

2.1 Unloading Header and Float Module from Trailer

The following procedure assumes that two headers were shipped on the trailer.

To avoid injury to bystanders from being struck by machinery, do not allow people to stand in unloading area.

Equipment used for unloading must meet or exceed the requirements specified below. Using inadequate equipment may result in chain breakage, vehicle tipping, or machine damage.

IMPORTANT:

Forklifts are normally rated with the load centered 610 mm (24 in.) from the back end of forks. To obtain forklift capacity for a load centered at 1220 mm (48 in.), check with your forklift distributor.

Table 2.1 Lifting Vehicle Requirements

| Minimum Lifting Capacity | 4082 kg (9000 lb.) load center (A) at 1220 mm (48 in.) (B) from back of forks |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Minimum Fork Length (C) | 1981 mm (78 in.) |

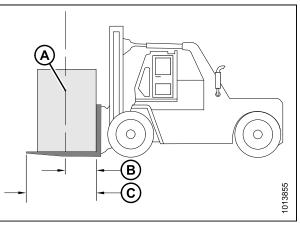


Figure 2.1: Minimum Lifting Capacity

A - Load Center of Gravity

B - Load Center 1220 mm (48 in.) from Back of Forks

C - Minimum Fork Length 1981 mm (78 in.)

To unload headers and float modules from a trailer, follow these steps:

- 1. Move trailer into position and block trailer wheels.
- 2. Lower trailer storage stands.

- 3. Approach one of the headers and line up forks (A) with fork slider channels (B) under the float module frame.
- 4. Slide forks (A) underneath fork slider channels (B) as far as possible without contacting the shipping support of the opposite header.
- 5. Remove hauler's tie-down straps, chains, and wooden blocks.
- 6. Slowly raise header off trailer deck.

Be sure forks are secure before moving away from load. Stand clear when lifting.

7. Back up until header clears trailer and slowly lower to 150 mm (6 in.) from ground.

- 8. Take header to the storage or setup area. Ensure ground is flat and free of rocks or debris that could damage the header.
- 9. Repeat above steps for second header.
- 10. Check for shipping damage and missing parts.



Figure 2.2: Header Shipping Supports

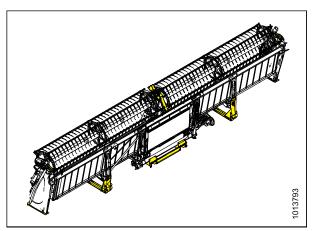


Figure 2.3: Header on Level Ground

2.2 Lowering Header

1. Approach the underside of the header with the lifting vehicle.

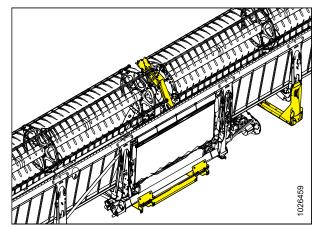


Figure 2.4: Underside of Header

3. Attach chain to shipping support (double reel [A]) (single reel [B]) at center reel arm.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** attempt to lift at cutterbar when unloading from trailer. This procedure is ONLY for laying the machine over into working position.



Stand clear of header when lowering. Machine may swing.

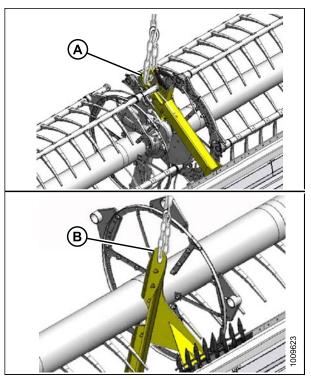


 Figure 2.5: Chain Attachment Locations

 A - Double Reel
 B - Single Reel

4. Back up **SLOWLY** while lowering forks until header rests on the ground.



Figure 2.6: Header Lowered onto Ground

- 5. Place 150 mm (6 in.) blocks (A) under each end and at the center of cutterbar, then lower header onto blocks.
- 6. Remove chain.

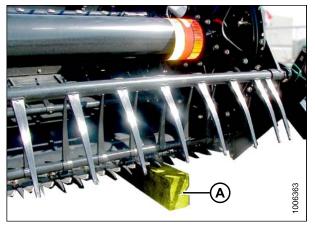


Figure 2.7: Blocks at Each End of Cutterbar

2.3 Removing Shipping Stands

NOTE:

Unless otherwise specified, discard stands, shipping material, and hardware. The removable stands are painted yellow.

1. Remove the two bolts (A) securing the right fork channel (B) to the shipping stand (C).

NOTE:

To access the bolts at the lower stand support, the header must be supported on 150 mm (6 in.) blocks, as directed in Step *5, page 9*.

- 2. Remove two bolts (D) securing the right fork channel (B) to the lower brace (E).
- 3. Repeat the steps above for the left side.

4. Remove the lower brace (A).

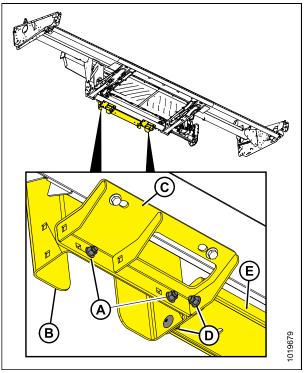


Figure 2.8: Shipping Supports

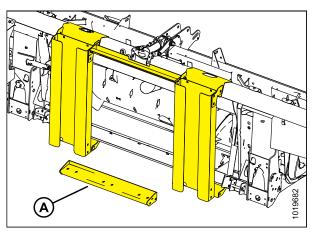


Figure 2.9: Shipping Supports

5. Remove the two bolts (A) from the upper brace. Repeat for the opposite side.

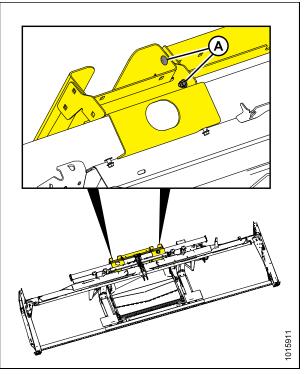


Figure 2.10: Shipping Supports

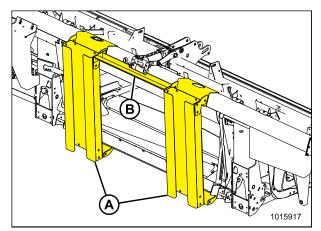


Figure 2.11: Shipping Supports

- 6. Remove the right and left fork channels (A).
- 7. Remove the upper brace (B).

8. Remove four bolts (A) and remove shipping stands (B) from the bottom of the float module.

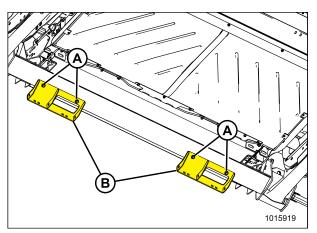


Figure 2.12: View from Below Header

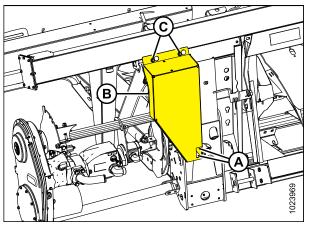


Figure 2.13: Coupler Cover

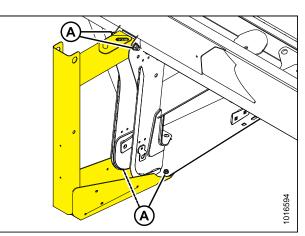


Figure 2.14: Shipping Stands at Outboard Legs (Right Side Shown)

9. Remove two bolts (A) securing the bottom of coupler cover (B) to the float module.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** remove bolts (C) because they hold multicoupler components in place. Loosen bolts (C) only enough so that coupler cover (B) can be removed, and then make sure you retighten the bolts.

- 10. Loosen two bolts (C), slide coupler cover to the left until cutouts are aligned with bolts, and then remove coupler cover.
- 11. Tighten two bolts (C).
- 12. Remove the four bolts (A) from the shipping stands at both outboard header legs. Remove stands.

13. Remove reel anti-rotation strap (A) between reel and endsheet.

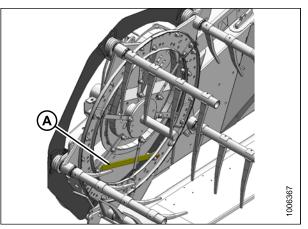


Figure 2.15: Reel Anti-Rotation Strap

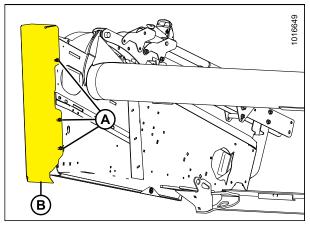


Figure 2.16: Endshield Guard

14. Loosen three bolts (A) in each endshield guard (B), and remove guards.

NOTE:

Hardware can be removed when header endshields are opened.

UNLOADING

2.4 Removing Endshields from Shipping Position – FD145 Headers

This procedure applies to FD1 13.7 m (45 ft.) headers only. All other header sizes are shipped with the endshields in operating position.

- 1. Loosen nuts (A) and remove screws (B). Use slots in shipping channel to access nuts. Remove channel (C).
- 2. Remove bolt (D) at front of endshield.

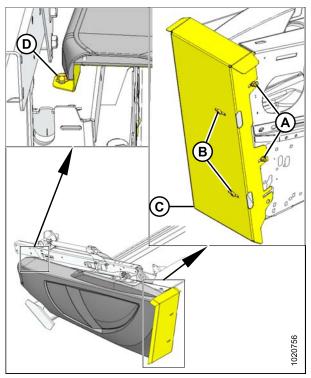


Figure 2.17: Left Endshield

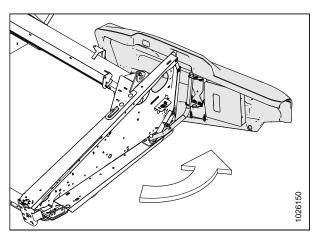


Figure 2.18: Left Endshield

3. Swivel endshield towards rear of header.

- 4. Engage lock (A) to prevent endshield movement.
- 5. Remove self-tapping screw (B).
- 6. Slide endshield upwards and remove from hinge arm.

NOTE:

downwards.

9. Install self-tapping screw (B).

The inboard holes (position 2) on the endshield bracket are used for shipping position.

7. Remove fasteners securing shipping brackets (A) to endshields and remove brackets. Discard fasteners and brackets.

8. Guide endshield onto hinge arm, using outboard holes

10. Disengage lock (A) to allow endshield movement.

(position 1) on bracket (C). Slowly slide the endshield

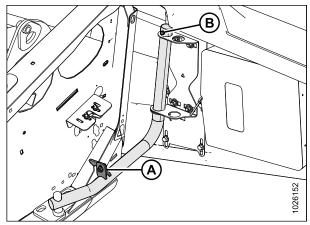


Figure 2.19: Left Endshield

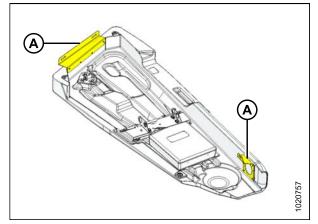


Figure 2.20: Left Endshield

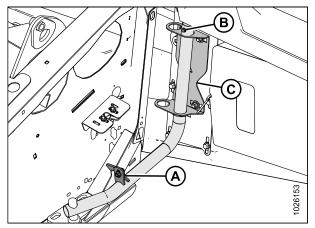


Figure 2.21: Left Endshield

- 11. Insert front of endshield behind hinge tab (A).
- 12. Swing endshield in direction (B) into closed position. Engage lock with a firm push.
- 13. Verify that endshield is locked.
- 14. Repeat above steps for opposite endshield.

15. On the outboard side of the right endsheet, remove shipping wire (A) securing divider rods (B) to the endsheet, and remove the divider rods from the shipping location.

16. Store both crop divider rods (A) in bracket (B) as shown on the inboard side of the right side endsheet.

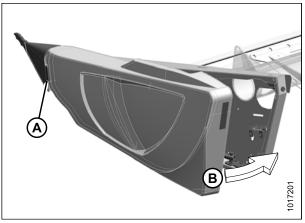


Figure 2.22: Left Endshield

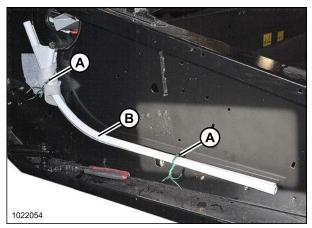


Figure 2.23: Divider Rods in Shipping Location on Header Endsheet

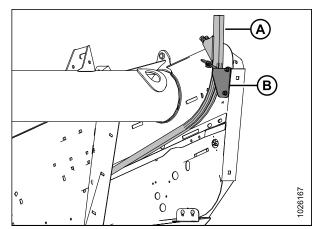


Figure 2.24: Divider Rods in Storage Location

Chapter 3: Assembling Header and Float Module

Perform all the procedures in this chapter in the order in which they are listed.

3.1 Attaching Reel Lift Cylinders

Bolts (A) (with tags) on reel arms keep the reel from sliding forward. Ensure fore-aft cylinders are attached before removing bolts.

NOTE:

Reel, draper, and cutterbar parts removed from illustration for clarity.

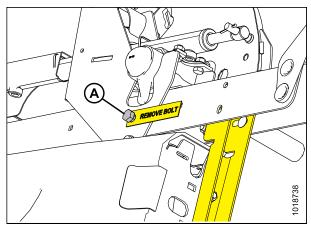


Figure 3.1: Reel Right Arm

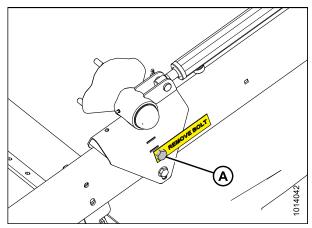


Figure 3.2: Reel Left Arm

Figure 3.3: Reel Arm Shipping Support

1. Remove two top bolts (A) on outboard reel arm support. Repeat for opposite side. 2. Remove two top bolts (A) on center reel arm to allow the center reel arm to move.

- Position sling (A) around the reel tube (B) close to the outboard end of reel and attach sling to a forklift (or equivalent).
- 4. Remove shipping wire/banding from the reel lift cylinder that is secured to the reel right arm.

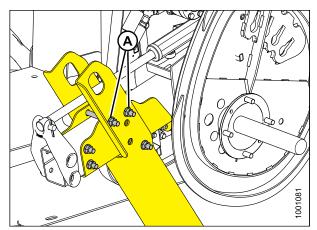


Figure 3.4: Double-Reel Center Arm

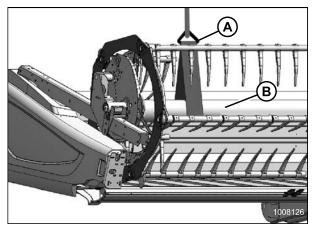


Figure 3.5: Reel Right End

- 5. Lift reel and remove pins from the endsheet and the reel arm.
- 6. Align the reel lift cylinder mounting bolts with the lug on the endsheet and the hole in the reel arm.
- 7. Secure cylinder to endsheet and reel arm with clevis pins (A) and (B) as shown.
 - Insert cotter pin into clevis pin (A) on **OUTBOARD** side of reel arm.
 - Insert cotter pin into clevis pin (B) on **INBOARD** side of endsheet.

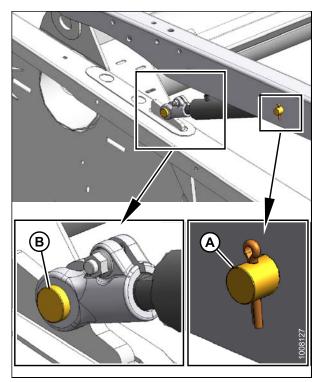


Figure 3.6: Reel Right Lift Cylinder Attachment

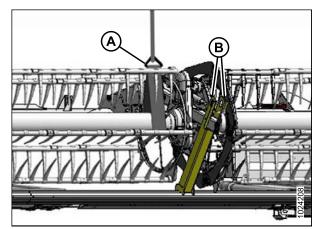


Figure 3.7: Lifting Double Reel

8. Position sling (A) around the reel tube near the reel center support arm. Raise lifting device to relieve load on shipping supports (B).

- 9. Lift reel to gain access to the center lift cylinder.
- 10. Remove shipping wire and banding from center reel lift cylinder. Remove socket head bolt and nut from cylinder rod.
- 11. Lift reel so that hole in center lift cylinder rod lines up with mounting hole in reel arm.
- 12. Attach rod end of cylinder to reel arm with socket head bolt and nut (A). Access hardware through holes in reel arm braces (C).
- 13. Torque bolt and nut (A) to $54-61 \text{ Nm} (40-45 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$.
- 14. Remove pin at barrel end of cylinder.
- 15. Adjust reel height so pin (B) can be installed at barrel end of cylinder and mounting structure.
- 16. Reposition the sling (A) around the reel tube near the opposite outboard reel arm.
- 17. Remove shipping wire and banding from the reel lift cylinder.

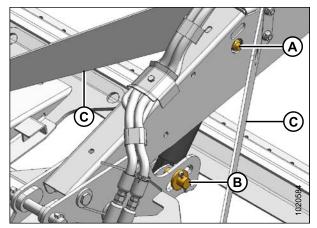


Figure 3.8: Reel Arm Braces

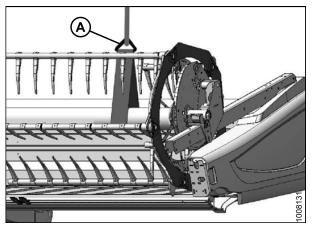


Figure 3.9: Outboard Reel Arm

- 18. Lift reel and remove pins from the endsheet and the reel arm.
- 19. Align the reel lift cylinder mounting holes until they line up with the lug on the endsheet and the hole in the reel arm.
- 20. Secure cylinder to endsheet and reel arm with pins as shown.
 - Insert cotter pin into clevis pin (A) on **OUTBOARD** side of reel arm.
 - Insert cotter pin into clevis pin (B) on **INBOARD** side of endsheet.

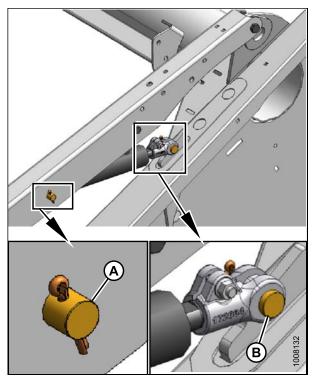


Figure 3.10: Lift Cylinder Attachment

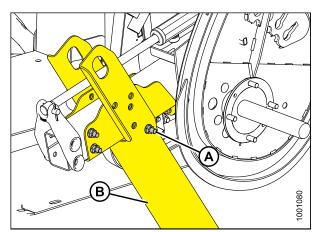


Figure 3.11: Reel Center Arm Shipping Support

21. Remove the remaining bolt (A), disengage center reel arm shipping support (B) from cutterbar, and remove shipping support.

22. Remove bolts (A) from reel arm support at endsheet and remove support. Repeat at other side.

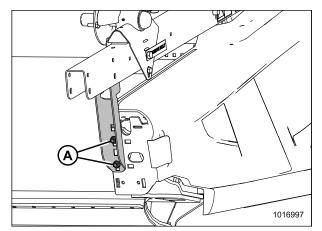


Figure 3.12: Reel Outboard Arm Support

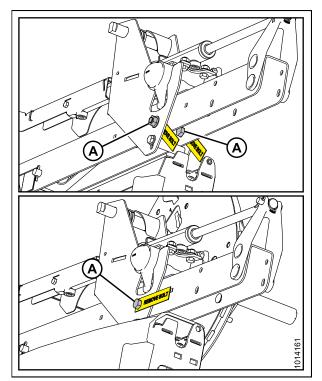


Figure 3.13: Reel Right Arm Top Image - Single Reel Bottom Image - Double Reel

23. Remove brace bolts and tags (A) locking the reel fore-aft position at outer reel arms.

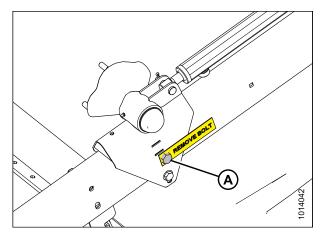


Figure 3.14: Reel Left Arm

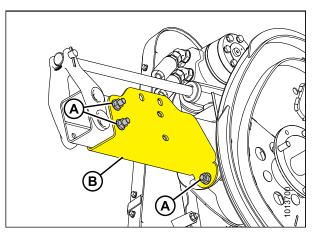


Figure 3.15: Center Arm Shipping Channel

24. Remove the remaining three bolts (A) locking the reel fore-aft position at the center reel arm, and remove shipping channel (B).

3.2 Attaching Cam Arms

To attach the reel cam arms, follow these steps:

- 1. Rotate the reel manually until the tine bars with disconnected cam links are accessible.
- 2. Remove shipping wire (A) (if not already removed).

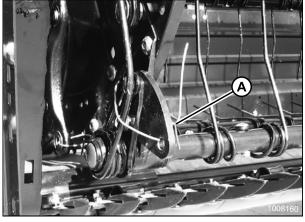


Figure 3.16: Disconnected Cam Links and Shipping Wire

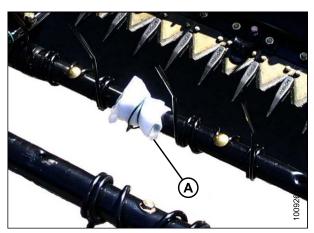


Figure 3.17: Hardware Bag Right Reel

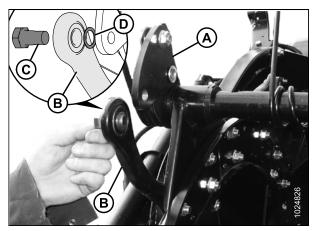


Figure 3.18: Bar Crank Attachment Holes and Link Alignment

3. Remove bag of hardware (A) from tine bar. It contains hardware for cam links and endshields.

- 4. Rotate tine bar crank (A) and position link (B) so attachment holes in bar crank are aligned with hole in link.
- 5. Install bolt (C) in link and position shim (D) on bolt so that shim is between link and tine bar crank.

NOTE:

Bolts are precoated with Loctite[®], so no further locking method is required.

- 6. Realign link (B) and tine bar crank (A) and thread in bolt (C).
- 7. Repeat for remaining tine bars and torque bolts to 165 Nm (120 lbf·ft).

8. Position reel pitch at position 4 to access bolt (A) after rotating the reel. Reposition reel to position 2 when done.

NOTE:

This procedure is done only on the right reel.

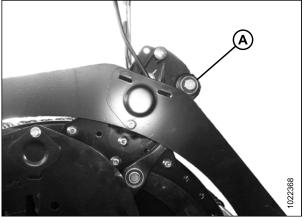


Figure 3.19: Right Reel with Cam Arms Attached

3.3 Repositioning Gearbox

To reposition the gearbox, follow these steps:

1. Remove shipping wire and wrapping on brace (A). Swing brace clear of gearbox.

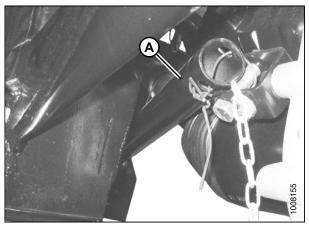


Figure 3.20: Shipping Wire and Brace

Figure 3.21: Shipping Position

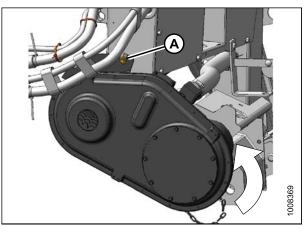


Figure 3.22: Working Position

2. Loosen nut (A) and move bolt out of shipping position slot.

3. Rotate gearbox and insert bolt into working position slot (A). Tighten nut.

- 4. Remove bolt (C) and nut from bracket on gearbox.
- 5. Position brace (A) inside bracket (B), and reinstall bolt (C) and nut.

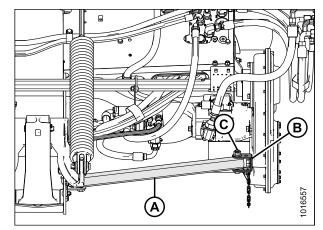


Figure 3.23: Brace Position

3.4 Installing Driveline

To prevent injury to the installer and damage to the driveline, hold the driveline so that it doesn't fall to the floor or ground.

NOTE:

Case New Holland drivelines are stored in a lower position on the float module. If installing a Case New Holland driveline, proceed to Step 2, page 28.

 Position the driveline storage support (A) onto the left side frame of the float module. Secure in place with two M10 carriage bolts and hex flange nuts (B).

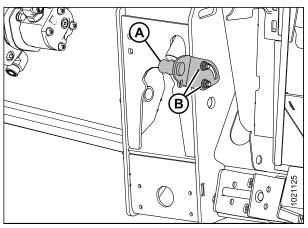


Figure 3.24: Driveline Support

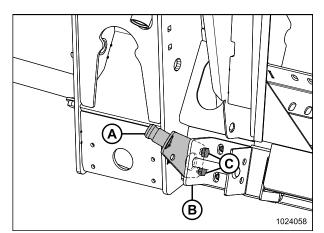


Figure 3.25: Driveline Support – Case New Holland

2. **Case New Holland only:** Position the driveline storage support (A) onto left side of bracket (B) as shown. Secure in place with two M12 hex head bolts (C) and hex flange nuts.

NOTE:

The support for 21-tooth spline drivelines is shown in the illustration at right. The support for 6-tooth spline drivelines is similar.

- 3. At gearbox end, remove driveline shield (A) by loosening nuts (B).
- 4. Position the driveline quick disconnect onto the float module gearbox shaft, pull back the collar, and slide onto the shaft until the yoke locks on to the shaft. Release the collar.
- 5. Position the shield (A) on the gearbox and secure with bolts (B).
- 6. Attach driveline chain (C) to existing chain on shield (A).

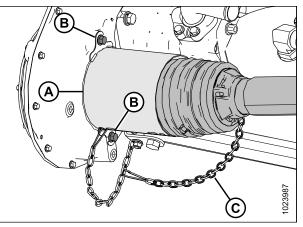


Figure 3.26: Gearbox End of Driveline

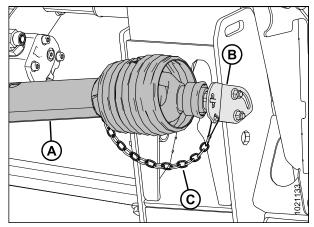


Figure 3.27: Driveline in Storage Position

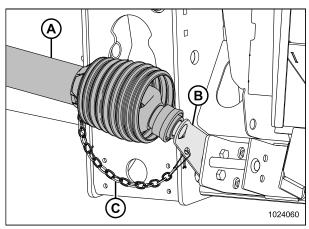


Figure 3.28: Driveline in Storage Position – Case New Holland

- 7. Position the combine end of the driveline (A) onto storage support (B), pull back the collar, and slide onto the shaft until the yoke locks on to the shaft. Release the collar.
- 8. Secure loose end of driveline chain (C) to driveline storage support (B).

Chapter 4: Setting up Float Module

Complete the following procedures in the order in which they are listed:

- 4.1 Installing Filler Cap, page 31
- 4.2 Float Module Feed Auger Configurations, page 34
- 4.3 Float Module Stripper Bars and Feed Deflectors, page 58

4.1 Installing Filler Cap

1. Remove filler cap from bag (A).

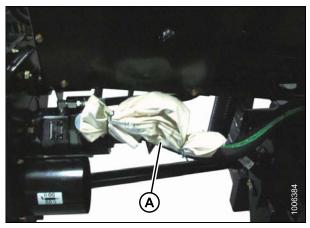


Figure 4.1: Hardware Bag



Fluid may be under pressure. Allow pressure to equalize by loosening screws and lifting the shipping cover slightly.

2. Remove yellow shipping cover (A) from the float module frame. Discard cover. Keep screws if screws are not supplied with filler cap.



Figure 4.2: Yellow Shipping Cover

3. Remove top gasket (A) for use in the next step.

NOTE:

There are two gaskets—one on each side of the filler strainer flange.

- 4. Place gasket (A) (removed from the top of the filler strainer) onto the filler cap neck (B) and align holes.
- 5. Install #10-32 screws (if supplied with cap, otherwise use existing screws) into filler cap neck (B) and push screws through gasket (A).
- 6. Apply hydraulic pipe controlled strength pipe thread sealant (Loctite[®] 565 or equivalent) to screws.

- 7. Place filler cap neck (A) (complete with screws) over opening and ensure the machine screws are aligned with the threaded holes.
- 8. Carefully thread in the machine screws using a cross pattern (as shown) in order to prevent cross threading of tapped holes.
- Repeat pattern to gradually tighten screws to 3.5 Nm (31 lbf·in).

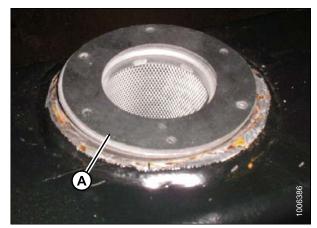


Figure 4.3: Top Gasket

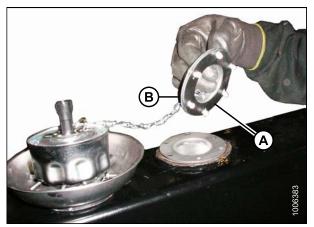


Figure 4.4: Filler Cap Neck

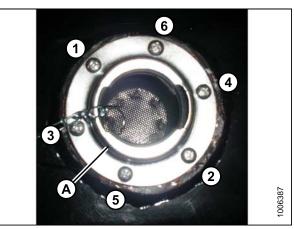


Figure 4.5: Screw Hole Locations

10. Install filler cap (A).

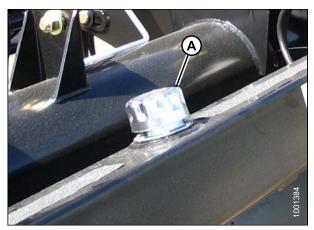


Figure 4.6: Filler Cap

4.2 Float Module Feed Auger Configurations

The FM100 feed auger can be configured to suit various crop conditions; there are four configurations available.

Narrow configuration is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- Gleaner (R6/75, R6/76, S6/77, S6/7/88, S96/7/8)
- New Holland CR (920/940/960, 9020/40/60/65, 6090/7090, 8060/8070/8080)

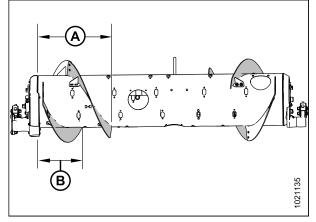


 Figure 4.7: Narrow Configuration (Rear View)

 A - 514 mm (20-1/4 in.)
 B - 356 mm (14 in.)

NOTE:

Dimensions are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

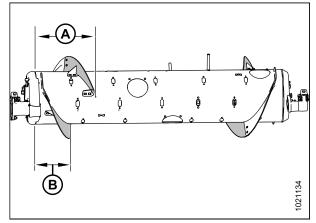


 Figure 4.8: Medium Configuration (Rear View)

 A - 410 mm (16-1/8 in.)
 B - 260 mm (10-1/4 in.)

NOTE:

Dimensions are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

Medium configuration is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- Case (5/6/7088, 7/8010, 7/8/9120, 5/6/7130, 7/8/9230, 5/6/7140, 7/8/9240)
- Challenger (66/67/680B, 54/560C, 54/560E)
- CLAAS (56/57/58/590R, 57/58/595R, 62/63/64/65/66/670, 73/74/75/76/77/780)
- John Deere (95/96/97/9860, 95/96/97/9870, S65/66/67/68/690, T670)
- Massey Ferguson (96/97/9895, 9520/40/60, 9545/65, 9380)
- New Holland CR (970/980, 9070/9080, 8090/9090, X.90, X.80)
- New Holland CX (8X0, 80X0, 8.X0, 8080/8090 Elevation)
- Versatile (RT490)

Wide configuration is an optional configuration for the following combines:

- Challenger (670B/680B, 540C/560C, 540E/560E)
- CLAAS (590R/595R, 660/670, 760/770/780)
- John Deere (T670)
- Massey Ferguson (9895, 9540, 9560, 9545, 9565, 9380)
- New Holland CX (8X0, 80X0, 8.X0)

NOTE:

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.

NOTE:

In some conditions, feeding may be further improved by removing all bolt-on flighting. Refer to *4.2.7 Optional Modification to Wide Configuration, page 46.*

Ultra Narrow configuration is an optional configuration that may improve feeding performance on combines with narrow feeder houses. It may also be helpful when harvesting rice.

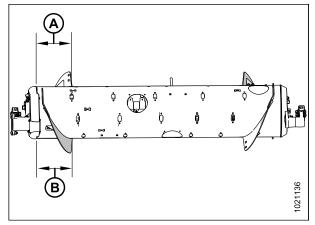


 Figure 4.9: Wide Configuration (Rear View)

 A - 257 mm (10-1/8 in.)
 B - 257 mm (10-1/8 in.)

NOTE:

Dimensions are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

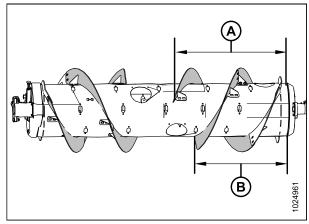


Figure 4.10: Ultra Narrow Configuration (Rear View)

A - 760 mm (29-15/16 in.)

B - 602 mm (23-11/16 in.)

NOTE:

Dimensions are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

4.2.1 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration or Narrow Configuration to Medium Configuration

Two kits of MD #287031¹ are required to convert to this configuration.

Ultra Narrow, Narrow, and Medium auger configurations are shown at right. When converting from Ultra Narrow configuration or Narrow configuration to Medium configuration, you will need to replace the existing flightings (A) with flightings (B).

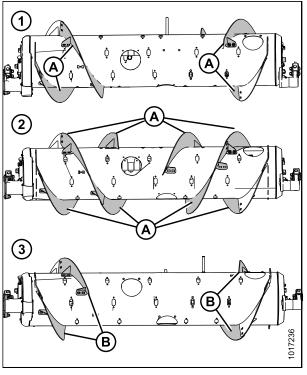


Figure 4.11: Auger Configurations (Rear View) 1 - Narrow Configuration 3 - Medium Configuration 2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

1. To improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

^{1.} MD #287031 contains wear-resistant flightings, and is available only through MacDon Parts.

2. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) from right end of auger. Retain for later reassembly.

NOTE:

If necessary, remove multiple access covers for better access.

- 3. Remove hardware (C) and bolt-on flighting (D) from the right side of the auger. Repeat for all the remaining hardware and bolt-on flighting. Discard flighting, but retain hardware to attach new flighting.
- 4. Repeat Steps *2, page 37* and *3, page 37* at the left side of the feed auger.
- 5. Remove flighting slot plug (B), M6 bolt (A), and tee nut from inside the feed auger. Repeat at the left side of the feed auger. Retain plug and hardware for reinstallation.

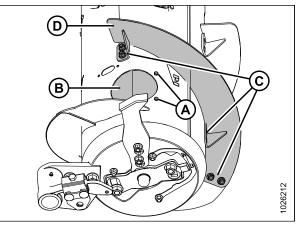


Figure 4.12: Narrow Configuration (Right Side)

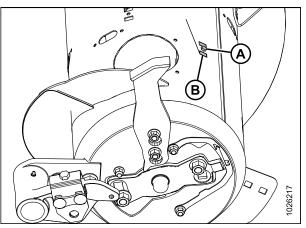


Figure 4.13: Narrow Configuration (Right Side)

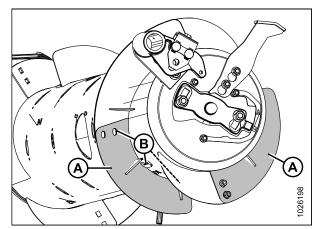


Figure 4.14: Medium Configuration (Right Side)

6. Install two bolt-on flightings (A) on the right side of the auger as shown, and secure each flighting with six carriage head bolts and nuts at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

Flighting bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

NOTE:

Flightings are **NOT** included in this kit. Order flighting kits MD #287031 separately.

 Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft). 8. Install two bolt-on flightings (A) on the left side of the auger as shown, and secure each flighting with six carriage head bolts and nuts retained from Step *3, page 37* at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

Flighting bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

NOTE:

Flightings are **NOT** included in this kit. Order flighting kits MD #287031 separately.

- Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).
- Use the access hole (A) to position the flighting slot plug (B) from inside the feed auger (as shown) and secure with a 20 mm long M6 hex head bolt (C) and tee nut. Use flighting and hardware retained from Step 5, page 37. Repeat for the remaining locations used to mount the flighting in Step 3, page 37 and Step 4, page 37.
- 11. Install additional auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration. Refer to *4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 54*.

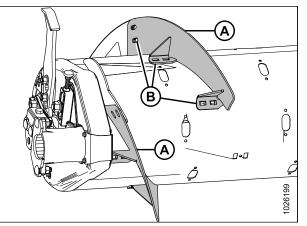


Figure 4.15: Medium Configuration (Left Side)

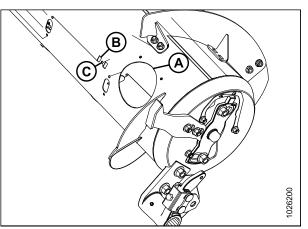


Figure 4.16: Medium Configuration Flighting Plug (Right Side)

4.2.2 Converting from Wide Configuration to Medium Configuration

One kit of MD #287031² is required to convert to this configuration.

Wide and Medium auger configurations are shown at right. When converting from Wide configuration to Medium configuration, you will need to install new flightings (A).

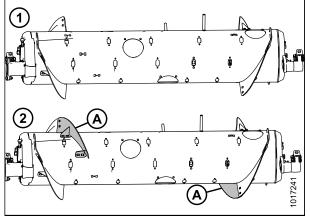


 Figure 4.17: Auger Configurations (Rear View)

 1 - Wide Configuration
 2 - Medium Configuration

^{2.} MD #287031 contains wear-resistant flightings, and is available only through MacDon Parts.

- 1. If necessary to improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.
- 2. Remove bolts (A) and remove the access cover (B) on the right side of the auger. Retain for later reassembly.

NOTE:

If necessary, remove multiple access covers for ease of access.

3. Remove and discard the two flighting slot plugs (C) on the right side of the auger.

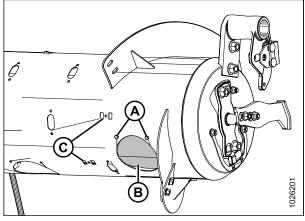


Figure 4.18: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

4. Install bolt-on flighting (A) on the right side of the auger as shown, and secure with six carriage head bolts and six nuts at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

Bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

 Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).

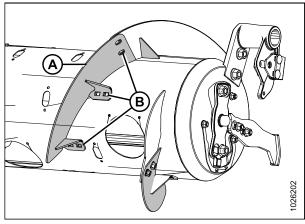


Figure 4.19: Medium Configuration (Right Side)

- 6. Repeat Step *2, page 39* and Step *3, page 39* at the left side of auger.
- Install bolt-on flighting (A) on the left side as shown, and secure with six carriage head bolts and six nuts at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

Bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

- Torque all nuts and bolts (B) to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).
- 9. Remove extra auger fingers. A total of 22 fingers are recommended for this configuration. Refer to *4.2.11 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 56.*

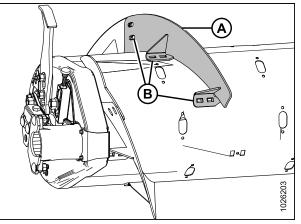


Figure 4.20: Medium Configuration (Left Side)

4.2.3 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Narrow Configuration

Two of either MD #287032 or B6400³ are required to convert to this configuration. Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware in the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

Medium, Wide, and Narrow auger configurations are shown at right. When converting from Medium or Wide configuration to Narrow configuration, you will need to replace the existing flightings (A) with flightings (B).

NOTE:

The flighting should fit tight against the auger tube; however, gaps are not uncommon. Crop material may collect in this gap, but generally this will not affect performance. If desired, silicone sealant may be used to fill these gaps.

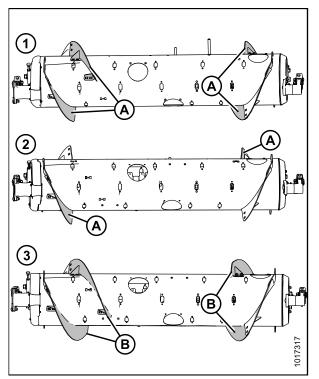


Figure 4.21: Auger Configurations (Rear View)
1 - Medium Configuration
2 - Wide Configuration
3 - Narrow Configuration

1. To improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

^{3.} MD #287032 is available only through MacDon Parts. B6400 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

- 2. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) from the right side of the auger. Retain for reassembly.
- 3. Remove hardware (C) and bolt-on flighting (D) from the auger.
- 4. Remove and discard the flighting slot plug (E) located close to the end of the flighting (D).
- 5. **Converting from Medium configuration:** Repeat above steps for the other flighting on the right side.
- 6. **Converting from Wide configuration:** Remove bolts (A), access cover (B), and two flighting slot plugs (C) from the right side of the auger.
- 7. Repeat Steps *2, page 41* to *6, page 41* at the left side of the feed auger.

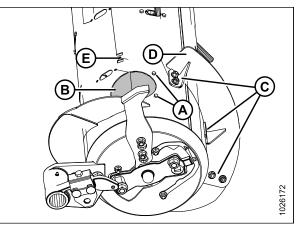


Figure 4.22: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

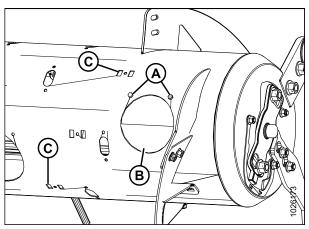


Figure 4.23: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

 Install two bolt-on flightings (A) on the right side as shown, and secure each flighting with six carriage head bolts (MD #136178) and nuts (MD #135799) at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

Bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

- Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).
- 10. Install flighting slot plug (MD #213084) at location (C) from inside the auger and secure with an M6 hex head bolt (MD #252703) and tee nut (MD #197263). Repeat for the other flighting mounting locations.

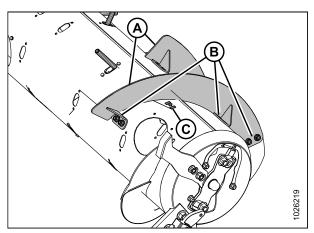


Figure 4.24: Narrow Configuration (Right Side)

 Install two bolt-on flightings (A) on the left side as shown, and secure each flighting with six carriage head bolts (MD #136178) and nuts (MD #135799) at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

Bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

- Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).
- Install flighting slot plug (C) (MD #213084) from inside the auger and secure with an M6 hex head bolt (MD #252703) and tee nut (MD #197263). Repeat for the other flighting mounting location used to mount the previous flighting in Step 3, page 41.

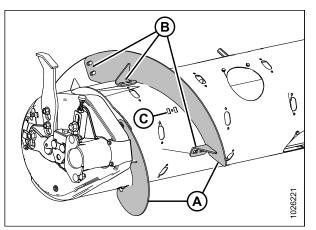


Figure 4.25: Narrow Configuration (Left Side)

14. Remove extra auger fingers. A total of 18 fingers is recommended for this configuration. Refer to *4.2.11 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 56.*

4.2.4 Converting from Ultra Narrow Configuration to Narrow Configuration

The Ultra Narrow and Narrow auger configurations are shown at right. Existing flightings (A) are removed from the auger when converting to the Narrow configuration.

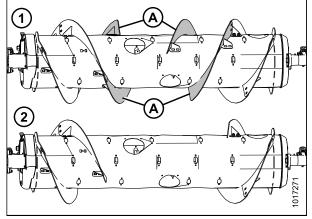


 Figure 4.26: Auger Configurations (Rear View)

 1 - Ultra Narrow Configuration
 2 - Narrow Configuration

1. If necessary to improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

2. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B). Retain for reassembly.

NOTE:

Some parts are removed from the illustration for clarity.

- 3. Remove hardware from locations (C), and remove bolt-on flighting (D) from feed auger.
- 4. Repeat procedure for the remaining three inboard flightings.
- 5. Install additional auger fingers. A total of 18 fingers are recommended for this configuration. Refer to *4.2.10* Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 54 for instructions.

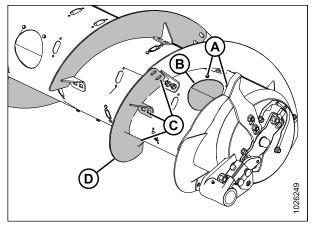


Figure 4.27: Ultra Narrow Configuration (Right Side)

4.2.5 Converting from Medium Configuration to Wide Configuration

The Medium and Wide auger configurations are shown at right. When converting from the Medium configuration to the Wide configuration, you will need to remove existing flightings (A) from auger and add auger fingers.

Four flighting plugs (MD #213084), M6 hex head bolts (MD #252703), and M6 tee nuts (MD #197263) are needed to cover exposed flighting mounting holes after the flightings are removed. These parts can be ordered from a MacDon Dealer.

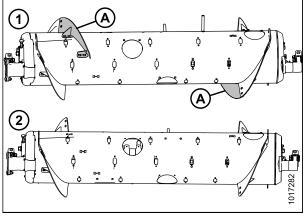


 Figure 4.28: Auger Configurations (Rear View)

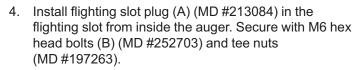
 1 - Medium Configuration
 2 - Wide Configuration

1. If necessary to improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

- 2. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B). Retain for reassembly.
- 3. Remove hardware from locations (C), and remove bolt-on flighting (D) from the feed auger.



- 5. Repeat above steps at the left side of the auger.
- 6. Install additional fingers. A total of 30 fingers are recommended for this configuration. Refer to *4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 54.*

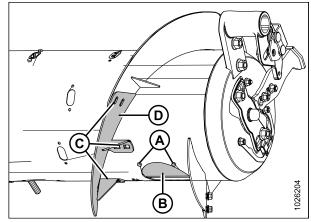


Figure 4.29: Right Side of Medium Configuration

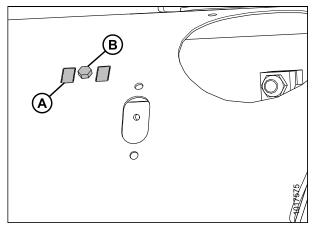


Figure 4.30: Right Side of Wide Configuration

4.2.6 Converting from Ultra Narrow or Narrow Configuration to Wide Configuration

One kit of MD #287031⁴ is required to convert to this configuration. Two flighting plugs (MD #213084), two M6 hex head bolts (MD #252703), and two M6 tee nuts (MD #197263) are recommended to close the flighting mounting locations. These parts can be ordered from a MacDon Dealer.

The Narrow, Ultra Narrow, and Wide auger configurations are shown at right. When converting from Narrow or Ultra Narrow configuration to Wide configuration, you will need to replace the existing flightings (A).

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

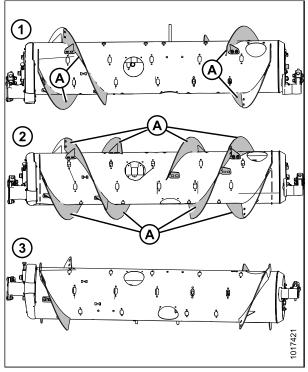


 Figure 4.31: Auger Configurations (Rear View)

 1 - Narrow Configuration
 2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

- 3 Wide Configuration
- 1. If necessary to improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.
- 2. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) from the right side of the auger. Retain for later reassembly.
- 3. Remove hardware (C) and bolt-on flighting (D) from the right side of the auger. Discard flighting, but retain hardware to attach the new flighting.
- 4. Remove flighting slot plug, bolt, and tee nut (E). Retain for later reinstallation.

NOTE:

Only two flighting slot plugs (E) should be removed one from each outboard side of the auger.

5. Repeat Step *2, page 45* and Step *3, page 45* for the remaining bolt-on flighting(s).

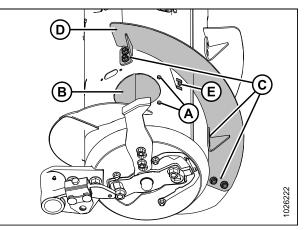


Figure 4.32: Narrow Configuration (Right Side)

^{4.} MD #287031 contains wear-resistant flightings, and is available only through MacDon Parts.

6. Install the new bolt-on flighting (A) using six carriage head bolts and nuts (B) on the right side of the auger.

IMPORTANT:

Flighting bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

NOTE:

Flightings are **NOT** included in this kit. Order flighting kit MD #287031 separately.

- 7. Reinstall flighting slot plug (C) removed in Step *4, page 45*.
- 8. Install the new bolt-on flighting (A) on the left side of the auger using six carriage head bolts and nuts (B).

IMPORTANT:

Flighting bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

NOTE:

Flightings are **NOT** included in this kit. Order flighting kit MD #287031 separately.

9. Reinstall flighting slot plug (C) removed in Step *4, page 45.*

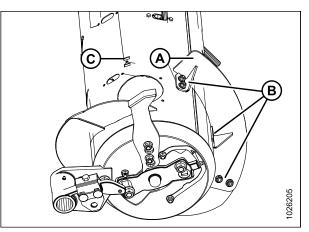


Figure 4.33: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

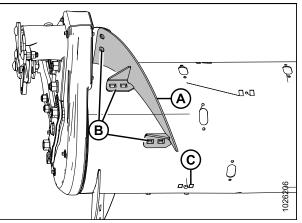


Figure 4.34: Wide Configuration (Left Side)

10. Install the remaining flighting slot plugs (MD #213084) using the M6 hex head bolts (MD #252703) and tee nuts (MD #197263) in the locations previously used to mount the flighting in Step *3, page 45* and Step *5, page 45*.

4.2.7 Optional Modification to Wide Configuration

1. To improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

- 2. Remove two bolts and access cover (A).
- 3. Remove hardware (B), and bolt-on flighting (C).
- Install flighting slot plugs (MD #213084) in the flighting mounting locations (D) and secure with M6 bolts (MD #252703) and tee nuts (MD #197263).
- 5. Repeat at the left side of the auger.
- 6. Install additional auger fingers. A total of 30 fingers are recommended for this configuration. Refer to *4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 54.*

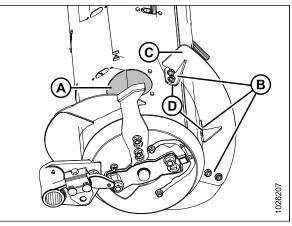


Figure 4.35: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

4.2.8 Converting from Medium Configuration or Wide Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration

Four kits of either MD #287032 or B6400 and some hole-drilling are required to convert to the Ultra Narrow configuration. Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware in the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

1. If necessary to improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

- 2. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) from the right side of the auger. Retain for reassembly.
- 3. Remove hardware (C) and bolt-on flighting (D) from the auger.
- 4. Remove the flighting slot plug (E) located close to the end of the flighting (D).
- 5. **Converting from Medium configuration:** Repeat above steps for the other bolt-on flighting on the same side.

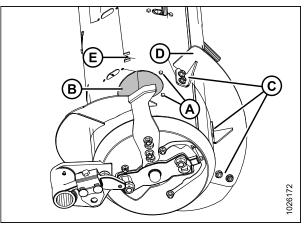


Figure 4.36: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

- 6. **Converting from Wide configuration:** Remove bolts (A), access cover (B), and two flighting slot plugs (C) from the right side of the auger.
- 7. Repeat Steps *2, page 47* to *6, page 48* at the left side of the auger.

8. Position two bolt-on flightings (A) on the right side, as shown. Temporarily secure flightings with two carriage head bolts and nuts at each location (B).

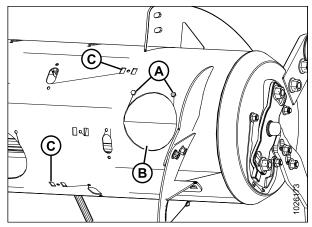


Figure 4.37: Wide Configuration (Right Side)

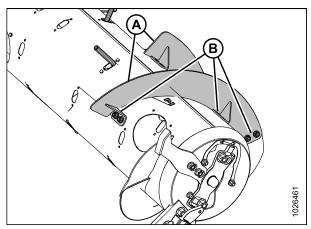


Figure 4.38: Right Side of Auger

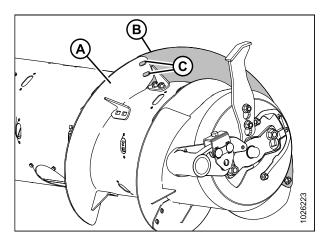


Figure 4.39: Right Side of Auger

- Position another bolt-on flighting (A) outboard of the temporarily installed flighting (B). Mark hole locations (C) of the bolt-on flighting onto the temporarily installed bolt-on flighting (B).
- 10. Remove temporarily installed bolt-on flighting (B) from the auger and drill two 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes at the marked locations.
- 11. Install the bolt-on flighting (B) with newly drilled holes using six carriage head bolts and nuts.

IMPORTANT:

Carriage bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

12. Repeat Steps *9, page 48* to *11, page 48* to the remaining bolt-on flighting on the right side of the auger.

 Position two bolt-on flightings (A) on the left side, as shown. Temporarily secure flightings with two carriage head bolts and nuts at each location (B).

- Position another bolt-on flighting (A) outboard of the temporarily installed flighting (B). Mark hole locations (C) of the bolt-on flighting onto the temporarily installed bolt-on flighting.
- 15. Remove temporarily installed bolt-on flighting (B) from the auger and drill two 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes at the marked locations.
- 16. Install the bolt-on flighting (B) with newly drilled holes using six carriage head bolts and nuts.

IMPORTANT:

Carriage bolt heads must be installed on inside of auger to prevent damage to internal components.

- 17. Repeat Steps *14, page 49* to *16, page 49* to the remaining bolt-on flighting on the left side of the auger.
- Place bolt-on flighting (A) outboard of the other flighting (B) on the left side of the auger, as shown.
- 19. Temporarily secure bolt-on flighting (A) with two button head bolts and nuts at location (C).

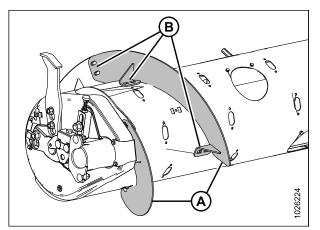


Figure 4.40: Left Side of Auger

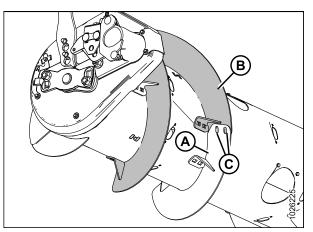


Figure 4.41: Left Side of Auger

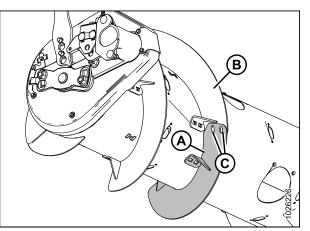


Figure 4.42: Left Side of Auger

20. Stretch flighting (A) to fit auger tube as shown. Use slotted holes on flighting to get the best fit around the auger tube.

- 21. With flighting in the desired position, mark hole locations (A) on auger tube.
- 22. Remove the flighting (B) from auger, and drill 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes at the marked locations (A) on auger tube.
- 23. Remove nearest access cover(s). Retain for reinstallation.
- 24. Install the bolt-on flighting (B) using two button head bolts and nuts at location (C), and four flange head bolts and nuts at locations (A).

IMPORTANT:

Ensure bolt heads at location (C) are on the inboard (crop side) and nuts are on the outboard side of the flighting.

- 25. Repeat Steps *18, page 49* to *24, page 50* for the remaining flighting on the left side of the auger.
- 26. Place bolt-on flighting (A) outboard of the other flighting (B) on the right side of the auger as shown.
- 27. Temporarily secure bolt-on flighting (A) with two button head bolts and nuts at location (C).
- 28. Repeat Steps *20, page 50* to *24, page 50* for both pieces of flighting on the right side of the auger.
- 29. Install flighting slot plugs (MD #213084) in the flighting mounting locations and secure with M6 bolts and tee nuts.
- Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then retorque them to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).

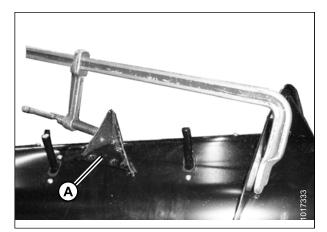


Figure 4.43: Flighting Stretched Axially

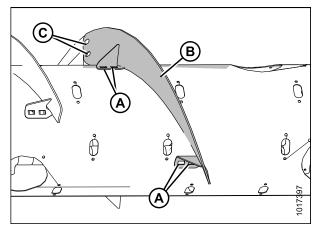


Figure 4.44: Left Side of Auger

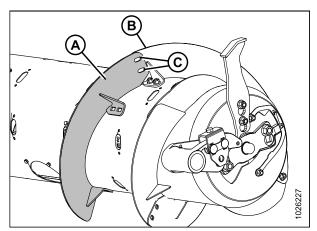


Figure 4.45: Right Side of Auger

NOTE:

The flighting should fit tightly against the auger tube; however, gaps are not uncommon. Crop material may collect in these gaps, but this should not affect performance. If desired, use silicone sealant to fill these gaps.

- 31. Add or remove auger fingers to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions. Refer to *4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 54* or *4.2.11 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 56*.
- 32. If not adding or removing auger fingers, reinstall all access covers and secure with bolts. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite[®] 243 or equivalent) and torque to 8.5 Nm (75 lbf·in).

4.2.9 Converting from Narrow Configuration to Ultra Narrow Configuration

Two kits of either MD #287032 or B6400⁵ and some hole-drilling are required to convert to this configuration. Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware at the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

NOTE:

Additional holes on the auger are needed before these flightings (A) can be installed.

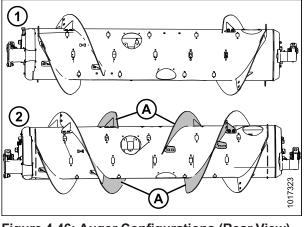


Figure 4.46: Auger Configurations (Rear View)1 - Narrow Configuration2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

1. If necessary to improve access and ease installation, remove float module from combine. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual or technical manual.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.

- 2. Place new bolt-on flighting (A) outboard of the existing flighting (B) on the left side of the auger, as shown.
- 3. Mark hole locations (C) of the new bolt-on flighting (A) onto existing bolt-on flighting (B).
- 4. Remove nearest access cover to existing bolt-on flighting (B). Retain hardware for reassembly.
- 5. Remove existing bolt-on flighting (B) from the auger. Retain hardware for reassembly.
- 6. Drill two 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes at the marked locations of existing bolt-on flighting (B).
- 7. Reinstall existing bolt-on flighting (B) on the auger.

NOTE:

Ensure carriage bolt heads are on the inside of the auger to prevent damage to internal components.

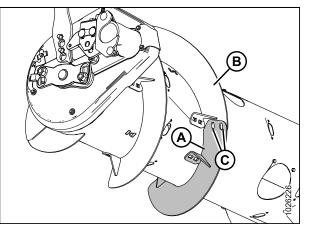


Figure 4.47: Left Side of Auger

^{5.} MD #287032 is available only through MacDon Parts. B6400 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

- 8. Place new bolt-on flighting (A) outboard of the existing flighting (B) of the left side of the auger, as shown.
- 9. Secure with two button head bolts (MD #135723) and nuts (MD #135799) at location (C).

IMPORTANT:

Ensure bolt heads are on the inboard (crop side) and nuts are on the outboard side of the flighting.

10. Stretch flighting (A) to fit auger tube as shown. Use slotted holes on flighting to get the best fit around the auger tube.

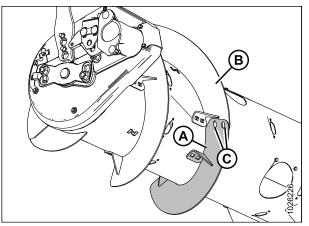


Figure 4.48: Left Side of Auger

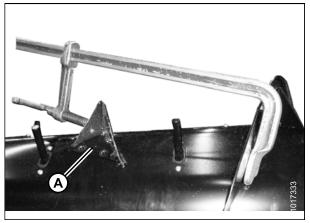


Figure 4.49: Flighting Stretched Axially

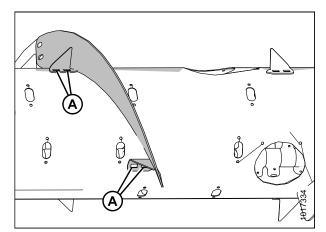


Figure 4.50: Flighting on Left Side of Auger

- 11. With flighting in desired position, mark hole locations (A) and drill 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes in auger tube.
- 12. Remove nearest access cover(s). Retain for reinstallation.
- 13. Secure bolt-on flighting on the newly drilled holes (A) using four flange head bolts and nuts.
- 14. Repeat Steps *2, page 51* to *13, page 52* for the other flighting on the left side of the auger.

- 15. Place flighting (A) outboard of the existing flighting (B) on the right side of the auger, as shown.
- 16. Repeat Steps *3, page 51* to *13, page 52* for both flightings on the right side of the auger.
- Install flighting slot plugs (MD #213084) in the flighting mounting locations and secure with M6 bolts (MD #252703) and tee nuts (MD #197263).
- Torque all nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf·ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque nuts and bolts again to 58–64 Nm (43–47 lbf·ft).

NOTE:

The flighting should fit tightly against the auger tube; however, gaps are not uncommon. Crop material may collect in these gaps, but this should not affect performance. If desired, use silicone sealant to fill these gaps.

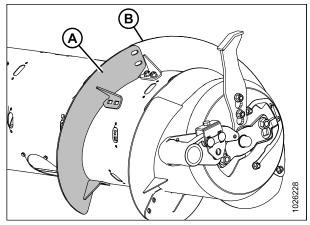


Figure 4.51: Flighting on Right Side of Auger

- 19. Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions. Refer to *4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 54* or *4.2.11 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 56*.
- 20. If not adding or removing auger fingers, reinstall all access covers and secure with bolts. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite[®] 243 or equivalent) and torque to 8.5 Nm (75 lbf·in).

4.2.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

NOTE:

2.

Not all parts needed for this procedure are included in this kit, and depending on the original configuration of the feed auger, additional parts may need to be ordered. Refer to *4.2 Float Module Feed Auger Configurations, page 34* to see which parts are available.

 Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) from the access cutout closest to the finger that needs to be installed or replaced.

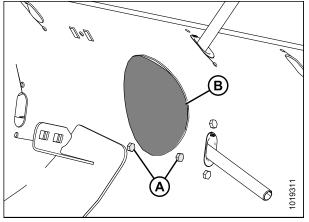


Figure 4.52: Access Hole Cover

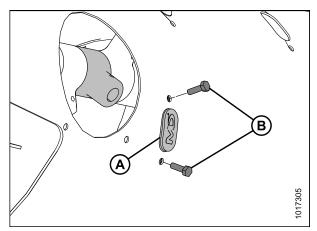


Figure 4.53: Auger Finger Hole

Remove the two bolts (B), tee nuts, and plug (A).

 Coat bolts (A) with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite[®] 243 or equivalent), and then insert the plastic finger guide (B) from inside the auger and secure it with bolts and tee nuts. Torque bolts to 8.5 Nm (75 lbf·in).

NOTE:

When installing additional fingers, ensure you install an equal number on each side of the auger.

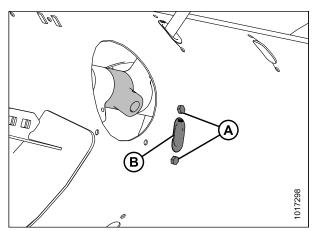


Figure 4.54: Auger Finger Hole

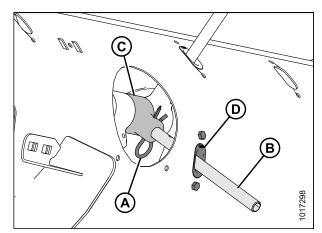


Figure 4.55: Auger Finger

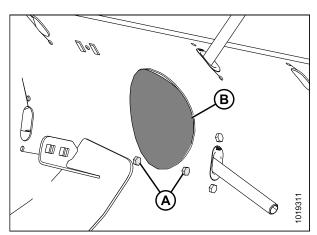


Figure 4.56: Access Hole Cover

- 4. From inside the auger, insert the new auger finger (B) through the plastic guide (D).
- 5. Insert the finger (B) into finger holder (C) and secure with hairpin (A).

NOTE:

Note the orientation of the hairpin (A). The round part should face the direction of auger rotation; the formed side (that is, the S-shaped side) must face the chain drive side of the auger.

 Coat bolts (A) with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite[®] 243 or equivalent), then replace the access cover (B) and secure with bolts. Torque to 8.5 Nm (75 lbf·in).

4.2.11 Removing Feed Auger Fingers

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Remove bolts (A) and remove the access cover (B) closest to the finger you are removing.

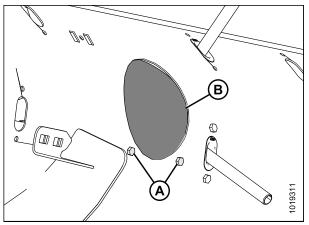


Figure 4.57: Auger Access Hole Cover

A BELLIOL



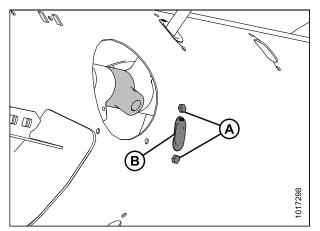


Figure 4.59: Auger Finger Hole

 Remove hairpin (A), pull finger (B) out of finger holder (C) from inside the auger, and then remove the finger from the auger by pulling it out through plastic guide (D).

3. Remove the bolts (A) and tee nuts securing the plastic guide (B) to the auger, and remove the guide from inside the auger.

 Coat bolts (B) with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite[®] 243 or equivalent), and then position plug (A) into the hole from inside the auger, and secure with two bolts (B) and tee nuts. Torque to 8.5 Nm (75 lbf·in).

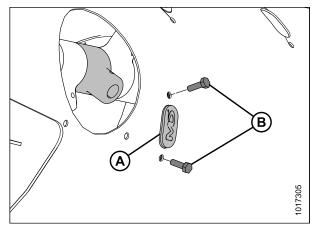


Figure 4.60: Plug

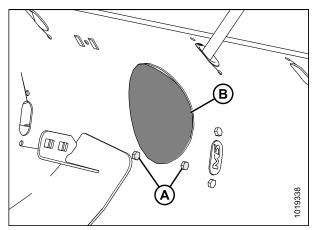


Figure 4.61: Auger Access Hole Cover

 Coat bolts (A) with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite[®] 243 or equivalent) and replace the access cover (B) using the bolts to secure the access cover in place. Torque bolts to 8.5 Nm (75 lbf·in).

4.3 Float Module Stripper Bars and Feed Deflectors

4.3.1 Removing Stripper Bars

Stripper bar kits may have been supplied with your header to improve feeding in certain crops such as rice. They are **NOT** recommended for cereal crops.

NOTE:

The following procedure does NOT apply to New Holland CR960, 9060, 970, 9070, and 9080 combines. For these combines, refer to *4.3.2 CR Feeder Deflectors, page 58*.

If necessary, remove auger stripper bars as follows:

- 1. Remove four bolts (A) and nuts securing bars (B) to adapter frame. Remove bars.
- 2. Repeat for opposite set of stripper bars.

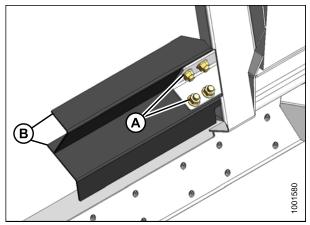


Figure 4.62: Auger Stripper Bar

4.3.2 CR Feeder Deflectors

For New Holland combines only: Short feeder deflectors have been factory-installed on the float module to improve feeding into the feeder house. Remove the feeder deflectors if necessary. Refer to *4.3.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines, page 59.*

Long feeder kits are provided for narrow feeder house combines and can be installed to replace the short feeder deflectors.

| Feeder House Size | Feeder Kit Size | MacDon Part Number |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1250–1350 mm (49–65 in.) | Short: 200 mm (7-7/8 in.) | MD #213613, 213614 |
| 1100 mm (43-1/2 in.) and below | Long: 325 mm (12-13/16 in.) | MD #213592, 213593 |

4.3.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines

- 1. Remove the two bolts and nuts (B) securing the feed deflector (A) to the float module frame, and remove the feed deflector.
- Position the replacement feed deflector (A), and secure with bolts and nuts (B) (ensure the nuts are facing the combine). Do NOT tighten nuts.

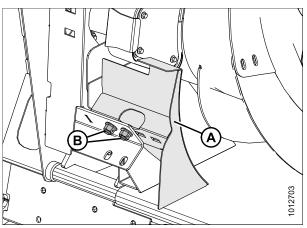


Figure 4.63: Feed Deflector

- 3. Adjust deflector (A) so that distance (C) between pan and deflector is 4–6 mm (5/32–1/4 in.).
- 4. Tighten nuts (B).
- 5. Repeat for opposite deflector.
- 6. Attach header onto the combine. Refer to 5 Attaching Header to Combine, page 61.
- After attaching header to combine, extend center-link fully, and check gap between deflector and pan. Maintain the 4–6 mm (5/32–1/4 in.) gap.

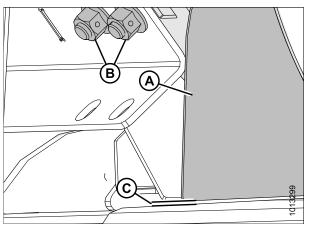


Figure 4.64: Pan and Deflector Distance

Chapter 5: Attaching Header to Combine

The procedures for attaching the header to a combine vary depending on the combine model. Refer to the following table for the appropriate procedure:

Table 5.1 Combine Model Header Attachment Procedures

| Combine | Refer to |
|---|--|
| AGCO Gleaner R and S Series; Challenger 660, 670, 680B, 540C, and 560C; Massey 9690, 9790, 9895, 9520, 9540, and 9560 | 5.1 AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines, page 61 |
| Case IH 7010, 8010, 7120, 8120, 9120, 5088, 6088, 7088, 5130, 6130, 7130, 7230, 8230, and 9230 | 5.2 Case IH Combines, page 69 |
| CLAAS 500, 600, and 700 (R Series) | 5.4 CLAAS Combines, page 87 |
| John Deere 60, 70, S, and T Series | 5.3 John Deere Combines, page 75 |
| New Holland CR and CX | 5.5 New Holland Combines, page 92 |

IMPORTANT:

Ensure applicable functions (automatic header height control [AHHC], Draper Header Option, Hydraulic Center-Link Option, Hydraulic Reel Drive, etc.) are enabled on the combine and in the combine computer. Failure to do so may result in improper header operation.

5.1 AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines

5.1.1 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Selector Switch and Harness

Gleaner combines prior to model year 2014 are not equipped to accommodate hydraulic reel fore-aft and header tilt options. The following additional items are required and not supplied by MacDon:

- Valve (A) (AGCO #71389745)
- Hoses
- Electrical components
- Couplers

NOTE:

Model year 2014 and later Gleaner combines will have the above parts factory-installed.

To enable the reel fore-aft and header tilt options, install the switch and harness as follows:

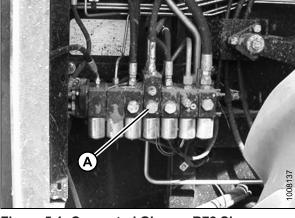


Figure 5.1: Converted Gleaner R72 Shown

IMPORTANT:

To prevent possible damage to electronic components, disconnect the positive cable from the combine battery before connecting harness to combine connectors.

ATTACHING HEADER TO COMBINE

 Before attaching any cable ties, route switch harness (A) from the front of the feeder house to the power connection point in the cab. Ensure the harness is long enough to reach the wiring at the selector valve with the header tilted forward, and that the feeder house can be fully lowered with adequate slack in the harness.

2. Use the cable ties provided to fasten the switch harness (A) to the main harness on the left side of the feeder house and under the cab floor at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to harness, fully lower feeder house and ensure there is adequate slack before attaching cable ties (B) to the harness.

- 3. Route the switch harness (A) at the rear of the feeder house up to the underside of the cab floor at location (B).
- 4. Use the cable ties provided to fasten the switch harness (A) to the main harness under cab floor at location (B).

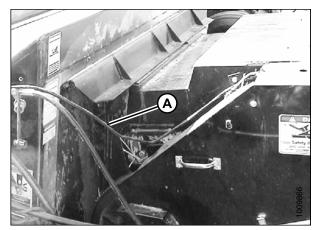


Figure 5.2: Switch Harness Routing

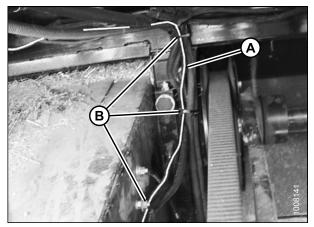


Figure 5.3: Left Side of Feeder House

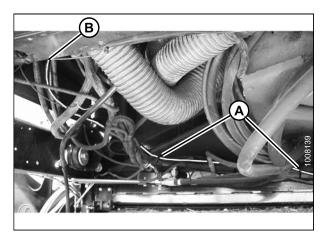


Figure 5.4: Harness under Right Side of Cab Floor

5. Route the switch harness (A) under the cab, through cab floor, and into console (B) at the foam seal (C).

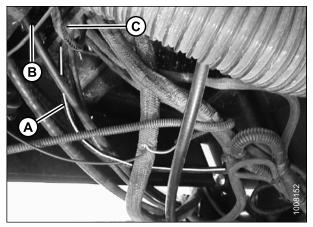


Figure 5.5: Harness through Cab Floor

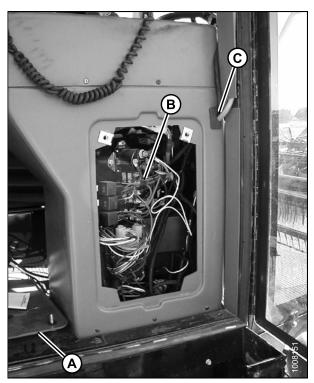


Figure 5.6: Switched Power Supply

- 6. Remove the console cover (A) as shown.
- 7. Connect the switch harness to the power supply inside the console at location (B).
 - The red wire from the inline fuse goes to the switched power supply (B).
 - The double black wire goes to ground.

IMPORTANT:

Connecting the switch harness to an unswitched power supply or cigarette lighter will supply constant power to the header tilt side of the solenoid valve and drain the combine battery during extended shutdown periods.

8. Route switch harness through grommet (C), and replace cover (A).

- 9. Mount switch plate onto console (A) in a comfortable position.
- 10. Connect harness to switch with red wire to center terminal (B), and white wire to either outer terminal (C).
- 11. Reconnect the battery cable.
- 12. Operate the switch to select either REEL FORE-AFT or HEADER TILT function.

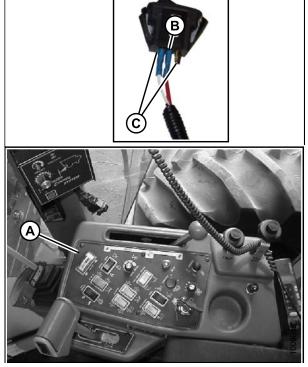


Figure 5.7: Switch and Console

5.1.2 Attaching Header to a Challenger, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson Combine

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

1. Use the lock handle (B) to retract the lugs (A) at the base of the feeder house.

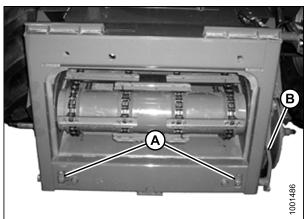


Figure 5.8: AGCO Group Feeder House

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Start the engine and slowly approach the header until the feeder house is directly under the float module top cross member (A) and the alignment pins (C) (refer to Figure *5.10, page 65*) on the feeder house are aligned with the holes (B) in the float module frame.

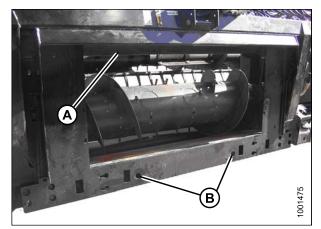


Figure 5.9: Float Module

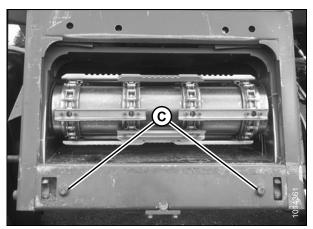


Figure 5.10: AGCO Group Alignment Pins



Figure 5.11: Feeder House and Float Module

NOTE:

Your combine feeder house may not be exactly as shown.

- 3. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder house saddle (A) is properly engaged in the float module frame.
- 4. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

ATTACHING HEADER TO COMBINE

5. Use the lock handle (B) to engage lugs (A) with the float module.

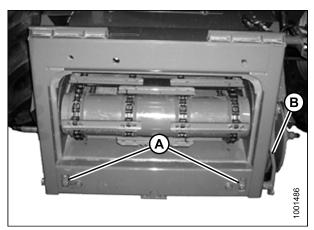


Figure 5.12: AGCO Group Feeder House

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 6. Start the engine and lower the header.
- 7. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

NOTE:

The FM100 Float Module is equipped with a multicoupler that connects to the combine. If your combine is equipped with individual connectors, a multicoupler kit (single-point connector) must be installed. Refer to Table *5.2, page 66* for a list of kits and installation instructions that are available through your combine Dealer.

Table 5.2 Multicoupler Kits

| Combine | Kit Number |
|--------------------|------------|
| Challenger | 71530662 |
| Gleaner R/S Series | 71414706 |
| Massey Ferguson | 71411594 |

8. Raise the handle (A) to release the multicoupler (B) from the float module.

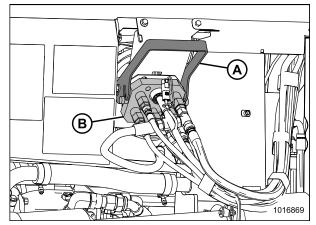


Figure 5.13: Float Module Multicoupler

- 9. Push the handle (A) on the combine to the fully-open position.
- 10. Clean the mating surfaces of the multicoupler (B) and receptacle if necessary.

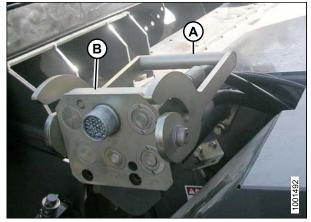


Figure 5.14: Combine Receptacle

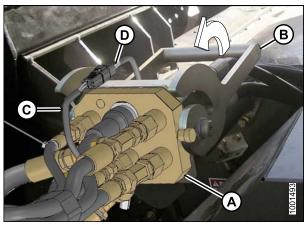


Figure 5.15: Multicoupler

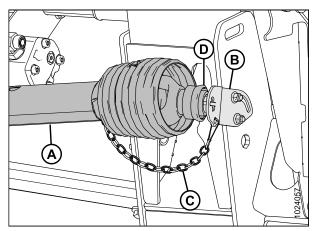


Figure 5.16: Driveline

- 11. Position the multicoupler (A) onto the combine receptacle, and pull the handle (B) to fully engage the multicoupler into the receptacle.
- 12. Connect the reel fore-aft/header tilt selector harness (C) to the combine harness (D).

- 13. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
- 14. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from support bracket.

- 15. Pull back the collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto the combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.
- 16. Proceed to 5.6 Completing the Header Assembly, page 97.

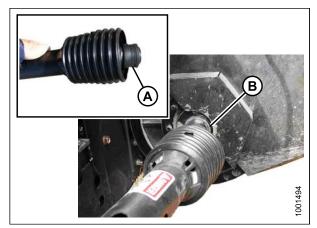


Figure 5.17: Driveline

5.2 Case IH Combines

5.2.1 Attaching Header to Case IH Combine

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

1. On the upper left side of the combine float module, remove nut (A), washer, spring, and lever (B).

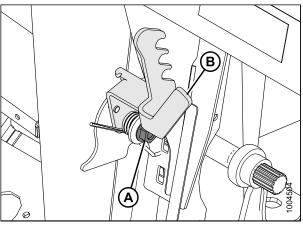


Figure 5.18: Combine Float Module Upper Left Side

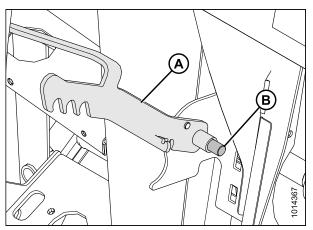


Figure 5.19: Combine Float Module Upper Left Side

2. Position lever (A) onto stud (B).

3. Place spring arm (C) into hook on lever (B) to preload it, and tighten nut (A) with washer onto the float module.

4. On the combine, ensure lock handle (A) is positioned so the hooks (B) can engage the float module.

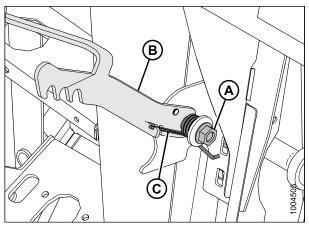


Figure 5.20: Combine Float Module Left Side

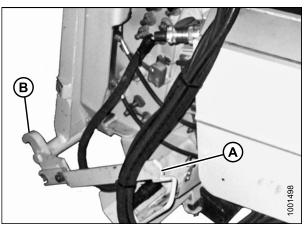


Figure 5.21: Feeder House Locks

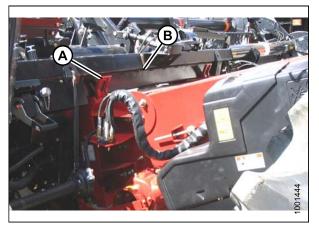
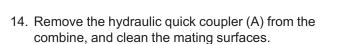


Figure 5.22: Combine and Float Module

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 5. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under the float module top cross member (B).
- 6. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
- 7. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

- 8. On the left side of the feeder house, lift lever (A) on the float module and push handle (B) on the combine to engage locks (C) on both sides of the feeder house.
- 9. Push down on the lever (A) so the slot in the lever engages the handle and locks the handle in place.
- If lock (C) does not fully engage the pin on the float module, loosen bolts (D) and adjust lock. Retighten bolts.
- 11. Open the cover on receptacle (A) located on the left side of the float module.
- 12. Press lock button (B) and pull the handle (C) to the fullyopen position.
- 13. Clean the receptacle mating surfaces.



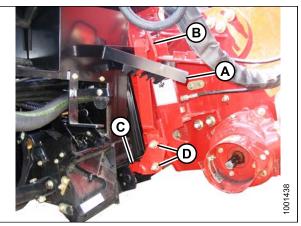


Figure 5.23: Combine and Float Module

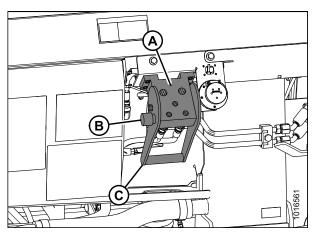


Figure 5.24: Float Module Receptacle



Figure 5.25: Combine Connectors

ATTACHING HEADER TO COMBINE

- 15. Position the coupler onto coupler receptacle (A) and push handle (B) (not shown) to engage the multicoupler pins into the receptacle.
- 16. Push handle (B) to the closed position until the lock button (C) snaps out.

17. Remove the cover from electrical receptacle (A). Ensure the receptacle is clean and has no signs of damage.

18. Remove electrical connector (A) from the storage cup on the combine and route it to the float module receptacle.

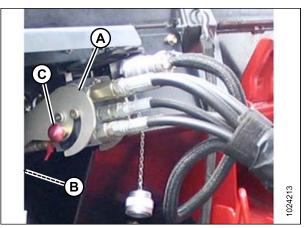


Figure 5.26: Hydraulic Connection

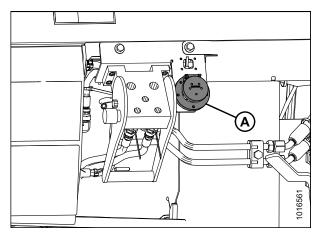


Figure 5.27: Electrical Receptacle



Figure 5.28: Combine Connectors

 Align the lugs on connector (A) with the slots in the receptacle (B), push the connector onto the receptacle, and turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.

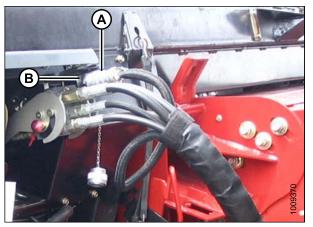


Figure 5.29: Electrical Connection

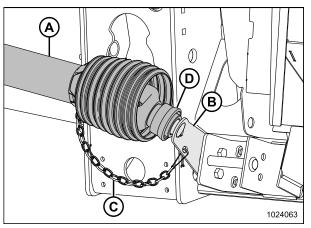


Figure 5.30: Driveline in Storage Position

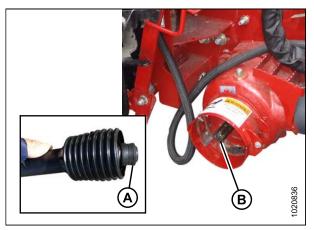


Figure 5.31: Combine Output Shaft

- 20. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
- 21. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from support bracket.

22. Pull back the collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto the combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

- 23. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).
- 24. Proceed to 5.6 Completing the Header Assembly, page 97.

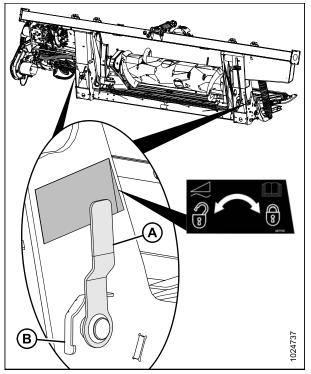


Figure 5.32: Float Lock Handle (Right Side Shown in Detail, Left Side Opposite)

5.3 John Deere Combines

The FD1 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with John Deere 60, 70, S, and T Series combines.

5.3.1 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Switch: S and T Series Combines

The reel fore-aft/header tilt switch allows the combine Operator to select either reel FORE-AFT or HEADER TILT mode.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under machine for any reason.

This procedure is applicable to John Deere S and T Series combines. For John Deere 60 or 70 Series combines, refer to 5.3.2 *Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Switch:* 60 and 70 Series Combines, page 79.

IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to electronic components, disconnect the positive cable from the combine battery and turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position before connecting the reel fore-aft/header tilt harness to the combine's auxiliary power connectors.

Prepare the combine cab for switch and harness installation as follows:

- 1. Open storage compartment on the console.
- 2. Remove the two screws (A) attaching compartment cover (B) to console and remove cover.

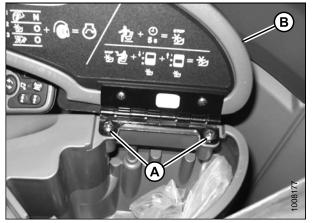


Figure 5.33: Storage Compartment and Cover

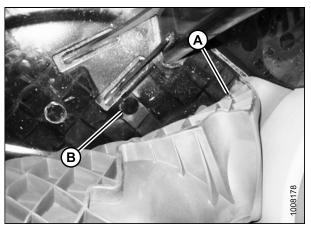


Figure 5.34: Floor Mat at Forward Right Corner and Knockout

- 3. Lift floor mat (A) at forward right corner to access knockout (B).
- 4. Remove the knockout (B).

- 5. Retrieve switch (A), harness (B), and support (C) provided with kit.
- 6. Install switch (A) into support (C) from the top. Ensure lugs on underside of support have secured the switch.

7. Connect the switch end of harness (A) to switch (B) with one of the wires to center terminal and the other wire to either outer terminal. The color of the wires does not matter; ensure one wire terminates at the center terminal.

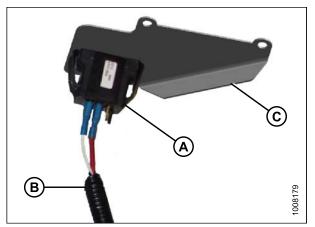


Figure 5.35: Switch and Harness

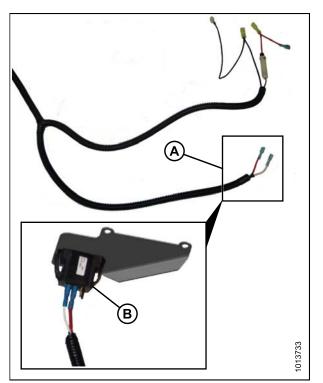


Figure 5.36: Switch End of Harness and Switch

- 8. Position support (C) onto console and align the holes in support with holes in the console.
- 9. Reinstall cover (B) with existing screws (A).

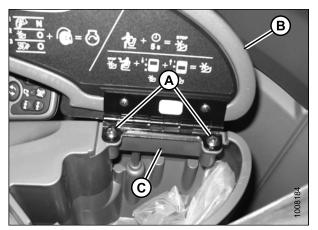


Figure 5.37: Support Position on Console

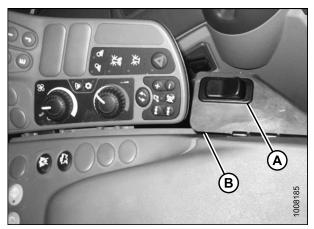


Figure 5.38: Secured Switch

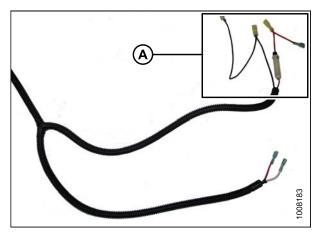


Figure 5.39: Feed End of Harness

10. Close cover and ensure that switch (A) and support (B) are secure.

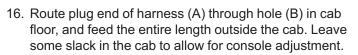
11. Connect the feed end of harness (A) to the auxiliary power outlet strip on the right side of the cab floor.

- 12. Connect the harness end to one of the auxiliary power supply points (A).
- 13. Connect the wire (from the in-line fuse) to the switched power supply (C).
- 14. Connect the other wire to ground (B).

IMPORTANT:

Connecting the switch harness to an unswitched power supply or cigarette lighter will supply constant power to the header tilt side of the solenoid valve and drain the combine battery during extended shutdown periods.

15. Tape unused wire jumpers to harness.



17. Reinstall floor mat.

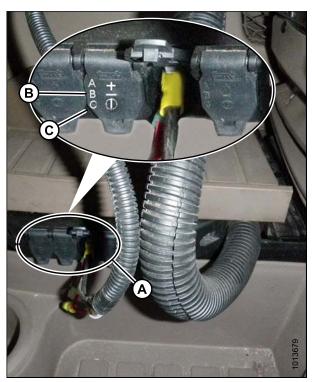


Figure 5.40: Combine Auxiliary Power Supply

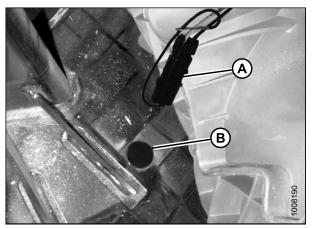


Figure 5.41: Plug End of Harness

- Route harness (A) under the cab (along the existing hoses) to the left side of the feeder house, under hose shield (C), and to the multicoupler (B).
- 19. Secure the harness to hoses with cable ties as required.

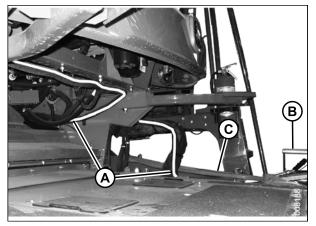


Figure 5.42: Harness and Feeder House Multicoupler

5.3.2 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Switch: 60 and 70 Series Combines

The reel fore-aft/header tilt switch allows the combine Operator to select either reel FORE-AFT or HEADER TILT mode.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under machine for any reason.

This procedure applies to John Deere 60 and 70 Series combines. For John Deere S and T Series combines, refer to 5.3.1 Installing Reel Fore-Aft / Header Tilt Switch: S and T Series Combines, page 75.

IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to electronic components, disconnect the positive cable from the combine battery and turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position before connecting the reel fore-aft/header tilt harness to the combine's auxiliary power connectors.

- 1. To ensure the switch harness will attach to selector valve wiring harness (with header tilted forward) and that the feeder house can be fully lowered with adequate slack in the harness, lay the switch harness along the route from front of the feeder house to the auxiliary power supply in the cab.
- 2. Route the switch harness (A) through an existing grommet (B) on the combine's electrical plate (located at the rear of the right side window).

NOTE:

To simplify feeding the harness through the grommet, wrap the switch and power plugs with electrical tape.

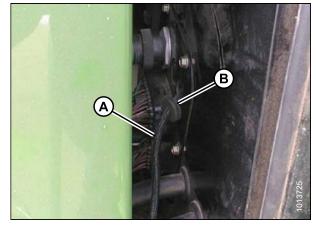


Figure 5.43: Switch Harness Routing

- 3. Retrieve switch (A) and support (C) provided with kit.
- 4. Install switch (A) into support (C) from the top. Ensure lugs on underside of support have secured the switch.

NOTE:

Image at right shows switch (A) connected to the harness (B).

5. Mount switch plate (A) between the armrest cover hinge (C) and the armrest using existing screws (B).

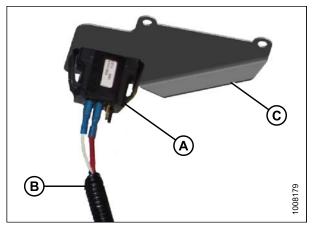


Figure 5.44: Switch and Harness

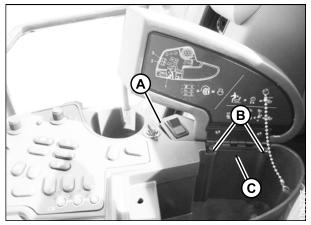


Figure 5.45: Switch Plate Mounting

6. Connect the switch end of harness (A) to switch (B) with one of the wires to center terminal and the other wire to either outer terminal.

NOTE:

The color of the wires does not matter; ensure one wire terminates at the center terminal.

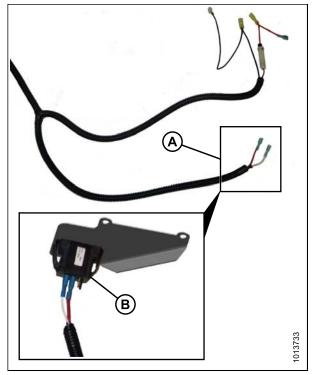


Figure 5.46: Switch End of Harness and Switch

 Connect the switch harness to auxiliary power supply (D). Connect the wire with the in-line fuse to the switched power supply (C) and the second wire to the ground (B).

IMPORTANT:

Connecting the switch harness to an unswitched power supply or cigarette lighter will supply constant power to the header tilt side of the solenoid valve and drain the combine battery during extended shutdown periods.

8. Tape the unused wire jumpers to the harness.

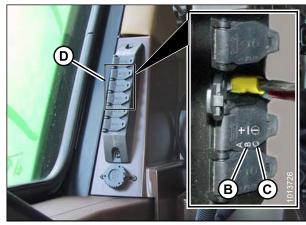


Figure 5.47: Auxiliary Power Supply

9. Route switch harness (A) across the underside of the cab, alongside an existing harness, to the left side of the feeder house.

IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to harness, ensure adequate slack by lowering the feeder house fully before securing harness with cable ties.

10. Secure switch harness (A) at the rear of the feeder house with cable tie.

11. Route switch harness (A) through the welded hose guide on feeder house.

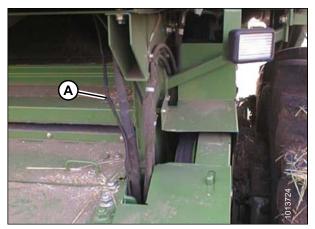


Figure 5.48: Switch Harness Routing



Figure 5.49: Switch Harness Routing

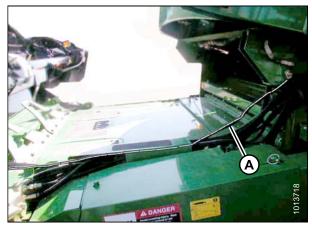


Figure 5.50: 60/70 Series Harness Routing

12. Secure switch harness (A) at multicoupler with a cable tie. Leave 100 cm (40 in.) extending past location (B).

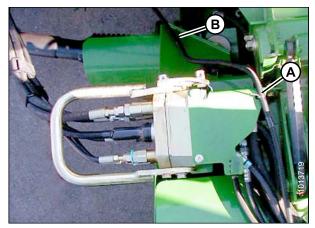


Figure 5.51: Switch Harness Routing

5.3.3 Attaching Header to John Deere Combine

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

 Push handle (A) on the combine multicoupler receptacle towards the feeder house to retract the pins (B) at the bottom corners of the feeder house. Clean the receptacle.

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 2. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until the feeder house saddle (C) is directly under the float module top cross member (D).
- 3. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header ensuring the feeder house saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
- 4. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

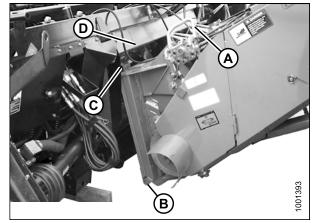


Figure 5.52: Combine and Float Module

5. Pull handle (A) on the float module to release multicoupler (B) from the storage position. Remove the multicoupler, and push the handle back into the float module to store.

- 6. Position multicoupler (A) onto the receptacle, and pull handle (B) to engage the lugs on the multicoupler into the handle.
- 7. Pull handle (B) to a horizontal position and ensure multicoupler (A) is fully engaged into the receptacle.

Figure 5.53: Multicoupler Storage

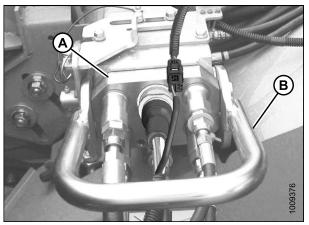


Figure 5.54: Multicoupler

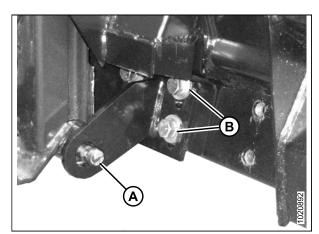


Figure 5.55: Feeder House Pin

8. Ensure that both feeder house pins (A) are fully engaged into the float module brackets.

NOTE:

If the pins (A) do not fully engage the float module brackets, loosen the bolts (B) and adjust the bracket as required.

9. Tighten bolts (B).

- 10. Slide latch (A) to lock the handle (B) in position and secure with lynch pin (C).
- If the float module is equipped with the reel fore-aft/header tilt selector, connect harness (D) to combine connector (E).

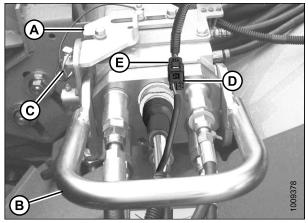


Figure 5.56: Multicoupler

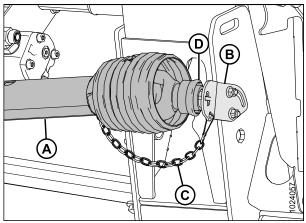


Figure 5.57: Driveline

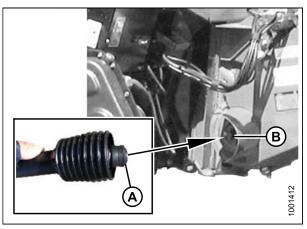


Figure 5.58: Driveline

- 12. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B)
- 13. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

14. Pull back the collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto the combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

- 15. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module, and setting it in unlocked position (B).
- 16. Proceed to 5.6 Completing the Header Assembly, page 97.

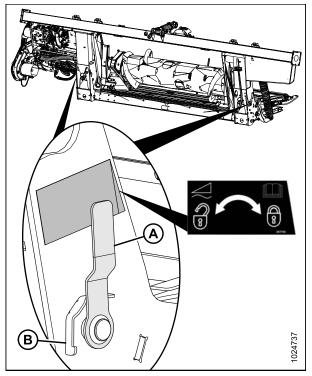


Figure 5.59: Float Lock Handle (Right Side Shown in Detail, Left Side Opposite)

5.4 CLAAS Combines

The FD1 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with CLAAS 500, 600, and 700 Series combines.

5.4.1 Attaching Header to CLAAS Combine

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

1. Move handle (A) on the Float Module into the raised position, and ensure pins (B) at the bottom corners of the float module are retracted.

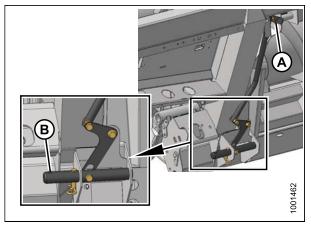


Figure 5.60: Pins Retracted



Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
- 3. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
- 4. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

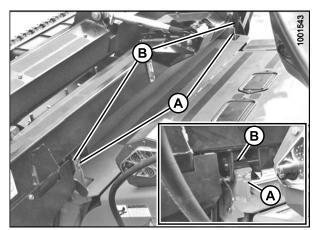


Figure 5.61: Header on Combine

5. Remove locking pin (B) from float module pin (A).

- 6. Lower handle (A) to engage float module pins (B) into the feeder house. Reinsert locking pin (C) and secure with the hairpin.
- 7. Remove the blocks from under the cutterbar.

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 8. Start the engine and lower the header.
- 9. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
- 10. Unscrew knob (A) on combine coupler (B) to release the coupler from the combine receptacle and clean the coupler.

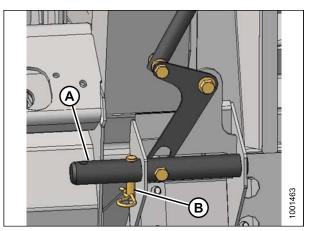


Figure 5.62: Locking Pins

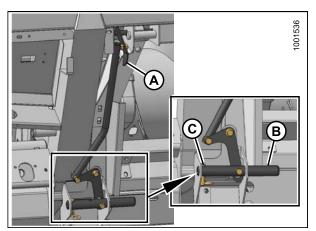


Figure 5.63: Engaging Pins

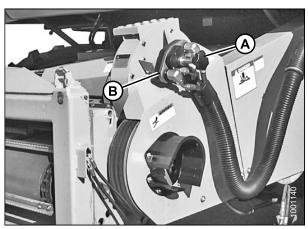


Figure 5.64: Combine Coupler

11. Remove float module receptacle cover (A).

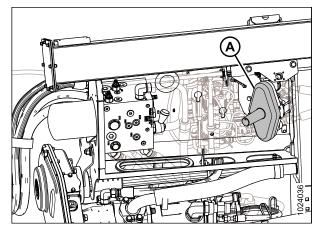


Figure 5.65: Receptacle Cover

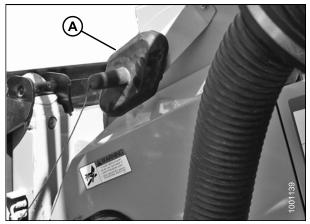


Figure 5.66: Receptacle Cover

12. Place float module receptacle cover (A) onto the combine receptacle.

- 13. Clean the mating surface of coupler (A) and position onto float module receptacle (B).
- 14. Turn knob (C) to secure the coupler to the receptacle.

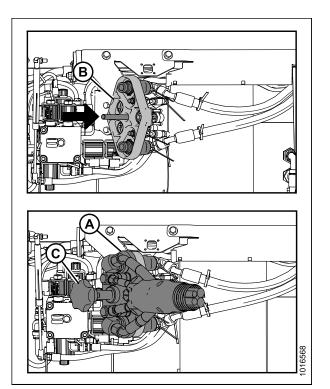


Figure 5.67: Coupler

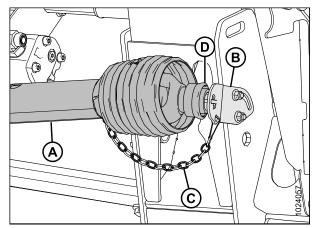


Figure 5.68: Driveline

- 15. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
- 16. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

17. Attach driveline (A) to the combine output shaft.



Figure 5.69: Driveline and Output Shaft

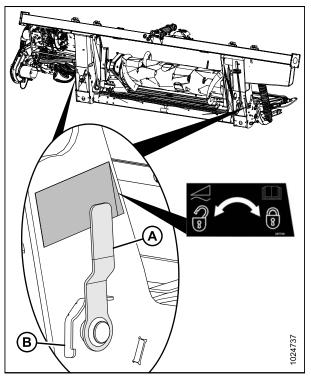


Figure 5.70: Float Lock Handle (Right Side Shown in Detail, Left Side Opposite)

- Disengage both header float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in the unlocked position (B).
- 19. Proceed to 5.6 Completing the Header Assembly, page 97.

5.5 New Holland Combines

The FD1 Series FlexDraper[®] is compatible with the following New Holland combines:

| Series | Combine Model | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
| | 920, 940, 960, 970, 980 | |
| CR | 9020, 9040, 9060, 9065, 9070, 9080 | |
| | 6090, 7090, 8080, 8090, 9090 | |
| | 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, 10.90 | |
| CX 840, 860, 870, 880 8070, 8080, 8090 8080 Elevation, 8090 Elevation | 840, 860, 870, 880 | |
| | 8070, 8080, 8090 | |
| | 8080 Elevation, 8090 Elevation | |

5.5.1 Attaching Header to New Holland CR/CX Combine

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

1. On the upper left side of the combine float module, remove nut (A), washer, spring, and lever (B).

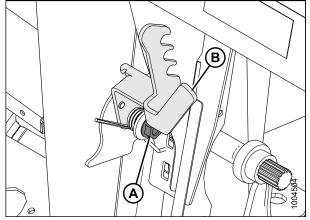


Figure 5.71: Combine Float Module Upper Left Side

2. Position lever (A) onto stud (B).

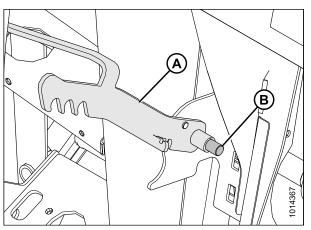


Figure 5.72: Combine Float Module Upper Left Side

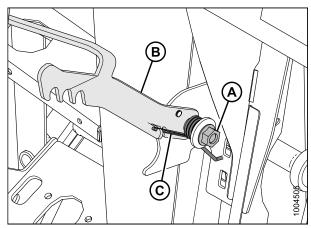


Figure 5.73: Combine Float Module Upper Left Side

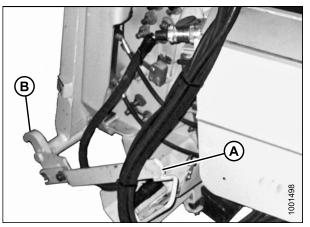


Figure 5.74: Feeder House Locks

3. Place spring arm (C) into hook on lever (B) to preload it, and tighten nut (A) with washer onto the combine float module.

4. Ensure the handle (A) is positioned so the hooks (B) can engage the float module.

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the float module until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
- 6. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
- 7. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
- 8. Lift lever (A) on the float module on the left side of the feeder house, and push handle (B) on the combine to engage locks (C) on both sides of the feeder house.
- 9. Push down on lever (A) so the slot in the lever engages the handle and locks the handle in place.
- If the lock does not fully engage pin (D) on the float module when lever (A) and handle (B) are engaged, loosen bolts (E) and adjust lock (C). Retighten bolts.
- 11. Open the cover on receptacle (A) located on the left side of the float module.
- 12. Push in lock button (B) and pull the handle (C) to the full open position.
- 13. Clean the receptacle mating surfaces.

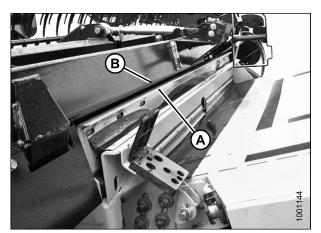


Figure 5.75: Header on Combine

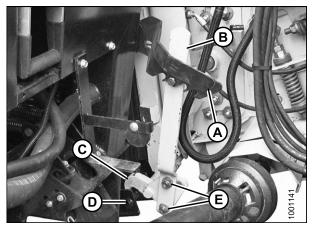


Figure 5.76: Feeder House Locks

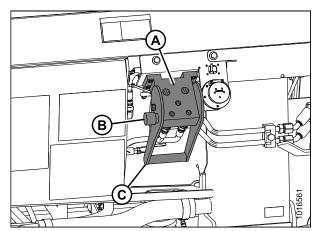


Figure 5.77: Float Module Receptacle

ATTACHING HEADER TO COMBINE

14. Remove hydraulic quick coupler (A) from the storage plate on the combine, and clean the mating surface of the coupler.

- 15. Position coupler (A) onto the float module receptacle, and push handle (B) to engage the pins into the receptacle.
- 16. Push handle (B) to closed position until lock button (C) snaps out.
- 17. Remove the cover on the float module electrical receptacle.
- 18. Remove connector (D) from the combine.
- 19. Align the lugs on connector (D) with the slots in the float module receptacle, and push the connector onto the receptacle. Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.
- 20. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
- 21. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from support bracket.

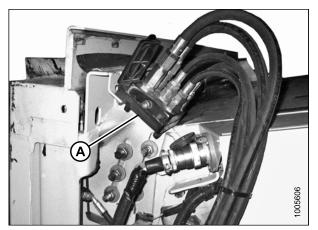


Figure 5.78: Combine Coupler

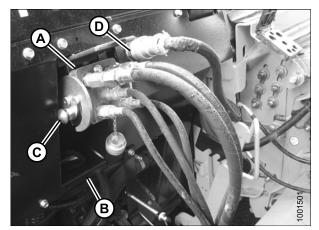


Figure 5.79: Connections

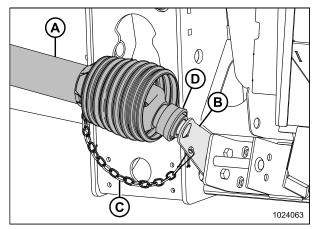


Figure 5.80: Driveline in Storage Position

ATTACHING HEADER TO COMBINE

22. Pull back the collar on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (A) until the collar locks.

- 23. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).
- 24. Proceed to 5.6 Completing the Header Assembly, page 97.

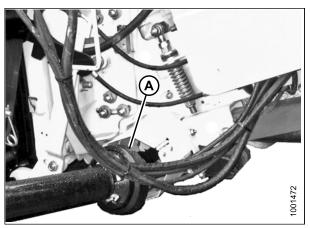


Figure 5.81: Driveline and Output Shaft

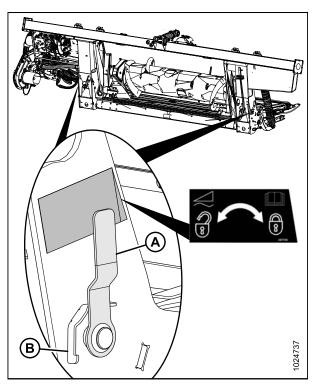


Figure 5.82: Float Lock Handle (Right Side Shown in Detail, Left Side Opposite)

5.6 Completing the Header Assembly

5.6.1 Removing Shipping Supports

The removable supports are painted yellow. Refer to illustrations and remove the remaining supports as follows:

NOTE:

Unless otherwise specified, discard supports as well as all shipping material and hardware.

1. Remove two bolts (A) and remove strap (B) from both sides of center frame.

NOTE:

If strap is difficult to remove, lift on one end of header to release the load on the strap so that bolts can be removed.

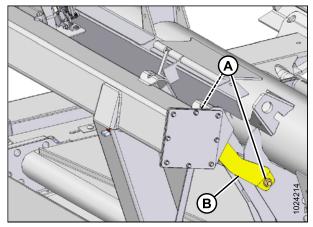


Figure 5.83: Strap on Center Frame

Figure 5.84: Lynch Pin, Hardware, and Shipping Brace

- 2. Remove lynch pin (A), nut, and bolt (B), and remove shipping brace (C).
- 3. Reinstall lynch pin (A).

5.6.2 Positioning Transport Lights

Transport lights are located on each outboard reel arm. They are shipped in an inverted position on the inboard sides of the reel arms.

- 1. Position light (A) perpendicular to header. Light arm should move with normal hand force yet maintain its position. If not, proceed to next step.
- 2. Loosen jam nut (B) on light attachment bolt, and adjust hex nut (C) as required. Tighten jam nut (B).
- 3. Repeat above for opposite side.

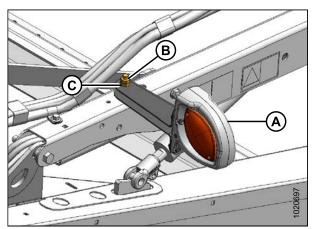


Figure 5.85: Transport Light

5.6.3 Crop Dividers

Crop dividers are used to help divide the crop when harvesting. They are removable to allow installation of vertical knives and to decrease transport width.

Removing Crop Dividers from Storage

Crop dividers are shipped attached to the inboard side of the endsheets. To remove the crop dividers, follow these steps:

- 1. Support the crop divider and remove the shipping wire at the front end (A).
- 2. Remove bolt (B).
- 3. Remove the bolt with washer (C) and retain for installation.

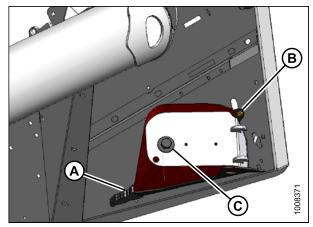


Figure 5.86: Crop Divider Stored on Endsheet

Opening Endshields

- 1. Push release lever (A) located on the backside of the endshield to unlock the shield.
- 2. Pull endshield open using handle depression (B).

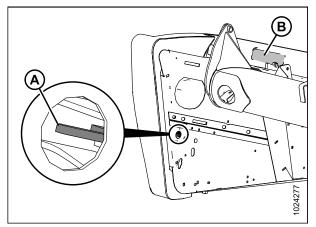


Figure 5.87: Left Endshield

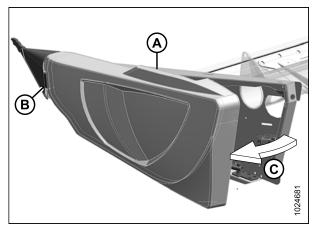


Figure 5.88: Left Endshield

Figure 5.89: Left Endshield

 Pull endshield at handle depression (A). Endshield is retained by a hinge tab (B) and will open in direction (C).

- 4. If additional clearance is required, pull the endshield free of hinge tab (A) and swing shield towards the rear of the header.
- 5. Engage safety latch (B) on hinge arm to secure the shield in fully open position.

Installing Crop Divider without Latch Option

NOTE:

If the crop divider latch option was ordered with the header, proceed to *Installing Crop Divider with Latch Option, page 101*. Otherwise, complete the following procedure:

- 1. Position crop divider as shown by inserting lugs (A) into holes (B) in endsheet.
- HODP223

Figure 5.90: Crop Divider without Latch

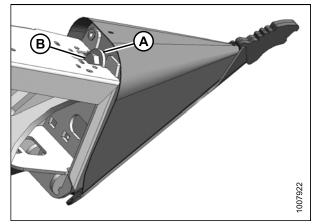


Figure 5.91: Crop Divider without Latch

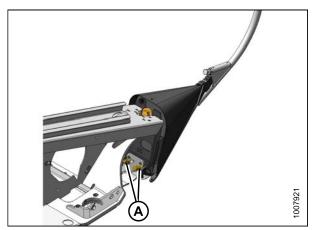


Figure 5.92: Crop Divider Adjustment

2. Lift the forward end of the crop divider and install bolt (B) and special stepped washer (A) (step towards divider). Tighten bolt.

3. Check that divider does **NOT** move laterally. Adjust bolts (A) as required to tighten divider, and remove lateral play when pulling at divider tip.

Installing Crop Divider with Latch Option

- 1. Position the crop divider as shown by inserting lugs (A) into holes in the endsheet.
- 2. Lift the forward end of the divider until pin (B) engages and closes latch (C).
- 3. Push safety lever (D) down to lock the pin in latch.

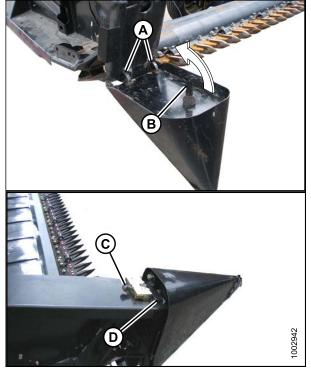


Figure 5.93: Crop Divider with Latch

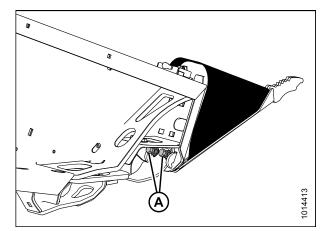


Figure 5.94: Crop Divider Adjustment

4. Adjust bolts (A) to tighten divider and remove lateral play when pulling at divider tip.

Closing Endshields

- 1. Disengage lock (B) to allow endshield to move.
- 2. Insert front of endshield behind hinge tab (A) and into divider cone.

- 3. Swing endshield in direction (A) into closed position. Engage lock with a firm push.
- 4. Check that endshield is locked.

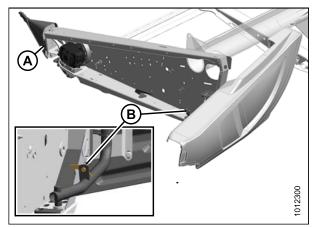


Figure 5.95: Left Endshield

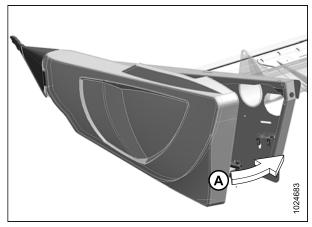


Figure 5.96: Left Endshield

Installing Crop Divider Rods

- 1. Remove divider rods from shipping location on header endsheet.
- 2. Position crop divider rod (B) on tip of crop divider as shown and tighten bolt (A).
- 3. Repeat procedure at opposite end of header.

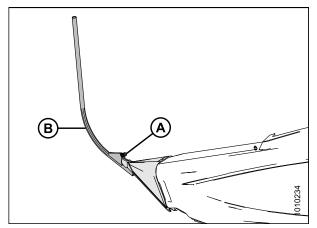


Figure 5.97: Divider Rod on Crop Divider

5.6.4 Installing Options

- 1. Retrieve the kits supplied as options with the header, and install them according to the instructions supplied with each kit.
- 2. Proceed to 6 Performing Predelivery Checks, page 105.

Chapter 6: Performing Predelivery Checks

This machine has been set at the factory and should not require further adjustments; however, the following checks will ensure your machine provides maximum performance. If adjustments are necessary, follow the procedures in this chapter.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid machine damage, check that no shipping material has fallen into the machine.

 Perform the final checks as listed on the **Predelivery Checklist** (yellow sheet attached to this instruction – *Predelivery Checklist, page 339*) to ensure the machine is field-ready. Refer to the following pages for detailed instructions as indicated on the Checklist. The completed Checklist should be retained by either the Operator or the Dealer.

6.1 Recording Model and Serial Number

Record the machine serial numbers on the Predelivery Checklist.

The serial number plate (A) is located beside the knife drive motor on the left endsheet.

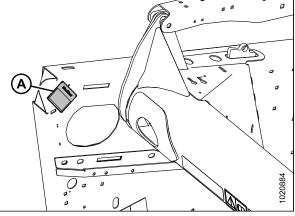


Figure 6.1: Header, Left Side Endshield

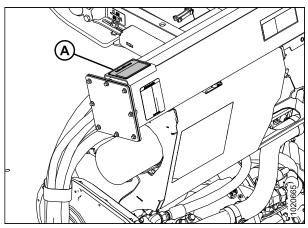


Figure 6.2: Float Module

The serial number plate (A) is located at the top left side of the float module.

Revision A

PERFORMING PREDELIVERY CHECKS

The serial number plate (A) is located on the right axle assembly.

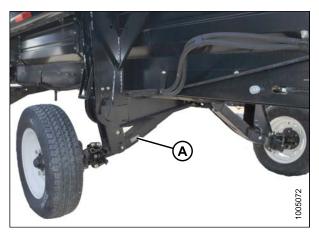


Figure 6.3: Transport/Stabilizer Option

6.2 Checking Tire Pressure: Transport and Stabilizer Wheels

Check tire inflation pressure. If necessary, inflate tires according to the following table:

Table 6.1 Tire Inflation Pressure

| Size | Load Range | Pressure |
|--------------|------------|------------------|
| ST205/75 R15 | D | 448 kPa (65 psi) |
| | E | 552 kPa (80 psi) |

IMPORTANT:

Do NOT exceed maximum pressure specified on tire sidewall.

6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque

Perform the following procedure to ensure that transport and stabilizer wheel bolts are correctly torqued:

 Check wheel bolt torque is 110–120 Nm (80–90 lbf·ft) and adjust as necessary. Refer to bolt tightening sequence illustration.

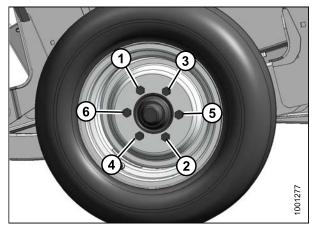


Figure 6.4: Bolt Tightening Sequence

6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box

Single-knife headers have one knife-drive box and double-knife headers have two knife-drive boxes. To access the knife drive box(es), endshield(s) must be fully opened.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before making adjustments to machine.

- 1. Press down on the latch in the opening (A) on the inboard side of the endsheet.
- 2. Pull endshield open using handle depression (B).

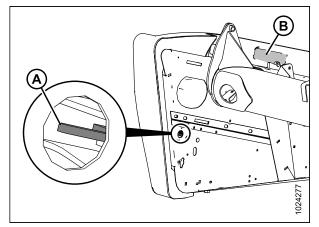


Figure 6.5: Endshield Latch Access

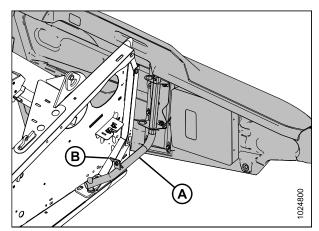


Figure 6.6: Left Endshield Support Tube

3. Swivel the endshield toward the back of the header and use the safety latch (B) to secure the endshield support tube (A) to the endsheet.

IMPORTANT:

The knife drive box breather is shipped in position (A) (forward) to prevent oil loss during transport. The breather **MUST** be repositioned to location (B) to prevent oil loss during normal operation. Failure to do so can result in damage to the knife drive box.

- 4. Check position of plug (A) and breather (B) at knife drive box. Position **MUST** be as shown.
- 5. Remove breather (B) and check oil level. The oil level should be between the bottom edge (C) of the lower hole (D) and the bottom (E) of the breather.

NOTE:

Check oil level with top of knife drive box horizontal and with the breather (B) screwed in.

6. Reinstall breather and tighten.

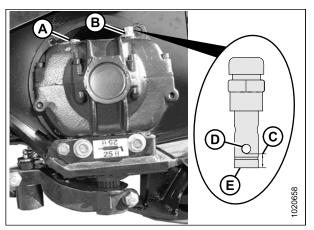


Figure 6.7: Knife Drive Box

6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

- 1. Lower the header to the ground and ensure the gearbox is in working position.
- 2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 3. Remove the oil level plug (A) and check that the oil level is up to the bottom of the hole.
- 4. Reinstall the oil level plug (A).

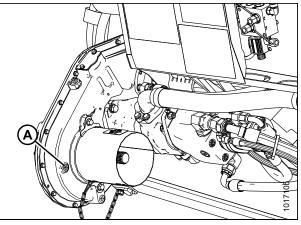


Figure 6.8: Header Drive Gearbox

6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir

1. Check the oil level using the lower sight (A) and the upper sight (B) with the cutterbar just touching the ground and with center-link retracted.

NOTE:

Check the level when the oil is cold.

- 2. Ensure the oil is at the appropriate level for the terrain as follows:
 - **Hilly terrain:** Maintain level so lower sight (A) is full, and upper sight (B) is up to one-half filled.
 - **Normal terrain:** Maintain level so lower sight (A) is full, and upper sight (B) is empty.

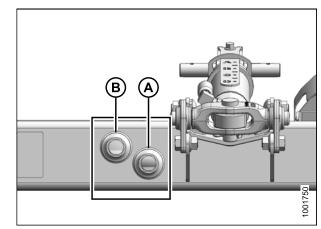


Figure 6.9: Oil Level Sight Glass

6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension

1. Open endshield(s).

NOTE:

The knife drive is identical on both sides of the header.

- Check belt (C) tension by applying 90 N (20 lbf) by hand to belt at mid-span, and check that belt deflects 18 mm (3/4 in.). If necessary adjust tension as follows:
 - a. Loosen two bolts (A) that secure the motor assembly to header endsheet.
 - b. Turn adjuster bolt (B) as required (clockwise to tighten) to achieve specified tension.

IMPORTANT:

To prolong belt and drive life, do **NOT** over-tighten belt.

- 3. Ensure that clearance between belt (A) and belt guide (B) is 1 mm (1/32 in.).
- 4. If required, loosen three bolts (C), and adjust position of guide (B).
- 5. Tighten bolts (C).
- 6. Close endshield(s).

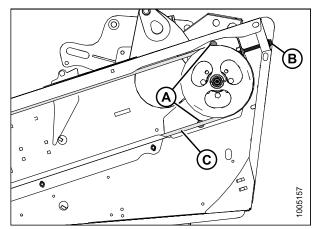


Figure 6.10: Left Shown – Right Opposite for Double-Knife Headers

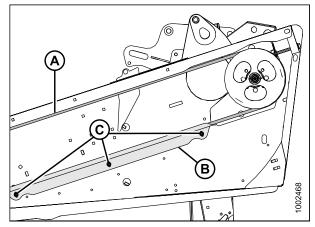


Figure 6.11: Knife Drive

6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs

This procedure is applicable to headers with pointed guards.



To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

Measure clearance between hold-downs and knife sections as follows:

- 1. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 2. Check guard alignment and adjust as required. Refer to 9.1.1 Adjusting Knife, page 320.
- 3. Manually stroke knife to align section (A) under hold-down (B).
- At standard guard locations, push knife section (A) down against guard (C) and measure clearance between hold-down (B) and knife section (A) with a feeler gauge. The clearance should be 0.1–0.6 mm (0.004–0.024 in.).
- 5. If necessary, refer to 6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs, page 115.

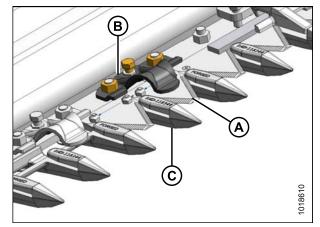


Figure 6.12: Normal Guard Hold-Down

Double knife:

- 6. Manually stroke knife to align sections (A) and (C) under center hold-down (B).
- 7. Measure between knife sections (A) and (C) with a feeler gauge. The clearances should be as follows:
 - At tip of hold-down: 0.1–0.4 mm (0.004–0.016 in.)
 - At rear of hold-down: 0.1–1.0 mm (0.004–0.040 in.)
- 8. If necessary, refer to 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard, page 115.

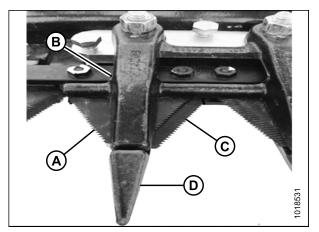


Figure 6.13: Double-Knife Center Guard Hold-Down

6.8.1 Adjusting Pointed Guard Hold-Downs

This procedure is applicable to formed sheet metal hold-downs. Do **NOT** use this procedure for the hold-down at center guard position where knives overlap on double-knife headers. For center guard, refer to 6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard, page 115.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

- 1. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 2. Decrease clearance by turning bolt (B) clockwise to lower front of hold-down (A).
- 3. Increase clearance by turning bolt (B) counterclockwise to raise front of hold-down.

NOTE:

For larger adjustments, it may be necessary to loosen nuts (C), turn adjuster bolt (B), and then retighten nuts.

4. Check clearance again and adjust as required.

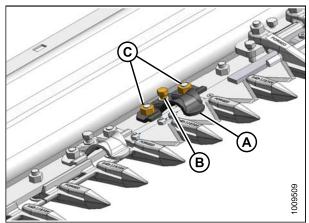


Figure 6.14: Cutterbar

6.8.2 Adjusting Hold-Down at Double-Knife Center Pointed Guard WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

- 1. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 2. Manually stroke knives so that sections (A) are under hold-down (B) as shown.
- 3. Loosen nuts (C) and back off bolts (D) until they don't contact cutterbar.
- Lightly clamp hold-down (B) to guard (E) with a C-clamp or equivalent. Position clamp on trash bar at location (F) as shown.
- 5. Turn bolts (D) until they contact cutterbar, then tighten **ONE** turn.
- 6. Remove clamp.
- 7. Tighten nuts (C) and torque to 45 Nm (35 lbf·ft).
- 8. Check clearances. Refer to 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs, page 114.

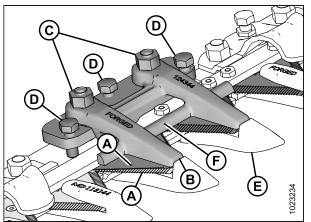


Figure 6.15: Center Guard

6.9 Centering Reel

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before making adjustments to machine.

- 1. Start engine and set cutterbar height at approximately 150 mm (6 in.) above ground.
- 2. Lower reel and adjust fore-aft position to 5 on reel arm indicator decal.
- 3. Stop engine and remove key from ignition.
- 4. Engage float locks and wing locks.
- 5. Manually rotate reel to position a tine tube above cutterbar.
- 6. Measure clearance (A) at locations (B) between reel tine tube and endsheet at both ends of header. The clearances should be the same if reel is centered. Refer to the following steps to center reel.

Loosen bolts (A) on braces (B) at center support arm.
 Move forward end of reel support arm (C) laterally as

9. Tighten bolts (A) and torque to 382 Nm (282 lbf·ft).

required to center reel.

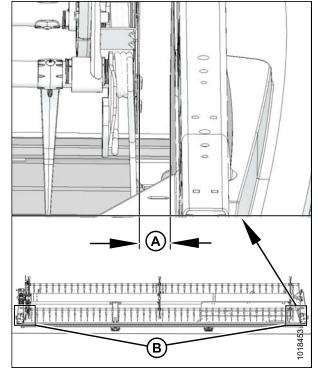


Figure 6.16: Centering Reel – Single Reel Shown, Double Reel Similar

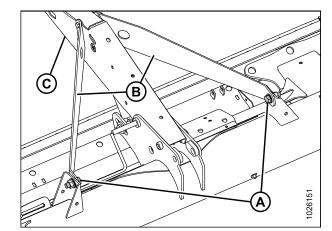


Figure 6.17: Center Support Arm

214685

6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float

The header is equipped with a suspension system that floats the header over the ground to compensate for ridges, trenches, and other variations in ground contour. If the header float is not set properly, it may cause the cutterbar to push into the ground or leave uncut crop. This procedure describes how to check header float and adjust to the factory-recommended settings.



To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

Use the following guidelines when adjusting float:

- Turn each adjustment bolt pair equally. Refer to Step *13, page 120*, and repeat torque wrench reading procedure on both sides of header.
- Set header float as light as possible without causing excessive bouncing to prevent knife component breakage, soil scooping, or soil build-up at the cutterbar in wet conditions.
- To avoid excessive bouncing and leaving a ragged cut, use a slower ground speed with a light float setting, if necessary.
- When cutting off the ground, use the stabilizer wheels in conjunction with header float to minimize bouncing at the header ends and to control cut height.

NOTE:

If adequate header float cannot be achieved using all of the available adjustments, an optional heavy-duty spring is available.

To check and adjust header float, follow these steps:

- 1. Park the combine on a level surface.
- 2. Level the header and float module. If the header and float module are not level, perform the following checks before adjusting the float:

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** use the float module springs to level the header.

- Check that the combine feeder house is level. Refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
- Check that the top of the float module is level with the combine axle.
- Ensure the combine tires are inflated equally.
- 3. Adjust header so that the cutterbar is 150–254 mm (6–10 in.) off the ground.
- Extend the header angle hydraulic cylinder to between B and C on indicator (A).

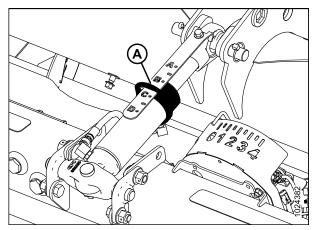


Figure 6.18: Center-Link

- 5. Adjust the reel fore-aft position to between 5 and 6 on the position indicator decal (A) located on the reel right arm.
- 6. Lower the reel fully.
- 7. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.

8. Place wing lock spring handles (A) in the **LOCKED** (upper) position.

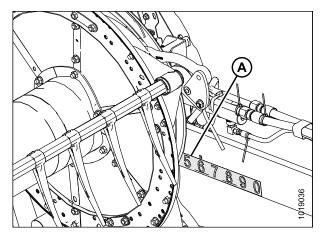


Figure 6.19: Fore-Aft Position

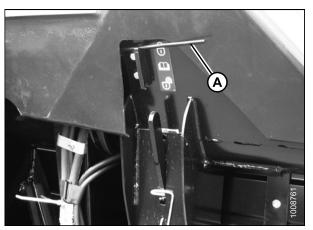


Figure 6.20: Wing Lock Spring Handle in Lock Position

 Disengage both header float locks by pulling the float lock handle (A) away from the float module and pushing the float lock handle down and into position (B) (UNLOCK).

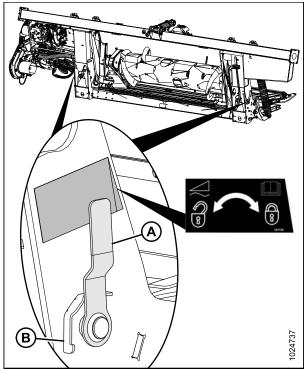


Figure 6.21: Header Float Lock (in Locked Position)

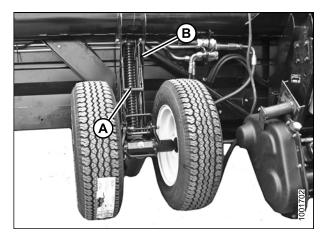


Figure 6.22: Left Wheel

- 10. Place stabilizer wheels and slow speed transport wheels (if equipped) in storage position as follows:
 - a. Support the wheel weight by lifting slightly with one hand, and pull up on handle (A) to release the lock.
 - b. Lift the wheels to the desired height, and engage the support channel into the slot (B) in the upper support.
 - c. Push down on the handle (A) to lock.

PERFORMING PREDELIVERY CHECKS

11. Remove the supplied torque wrench (A) from its storage position at the right side of the float module frame. Pull in the direction shown to disengage the wrench from the hook.

- 12. Place torque wrench (A) onto float lock (B). Note the position of the wrench for checking left or right side.
- 13. Push down on wrench to rotate bell crank (C) forward.

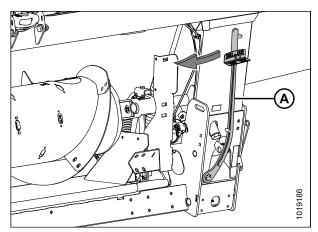


Figure 6.23: Torque Wrench Storage Location

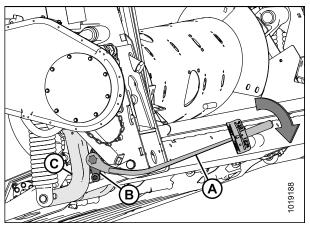


Figure 6.24: Float Module – Left Side

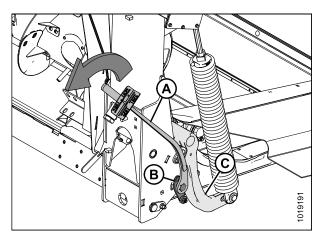


Figure 6.25: Float Module – Right Side

- 14. Push down on the wrench until indicator (A) reaches a maximum reading and then begins to decrease. Note the maximum reading. Repeat at opposite side.
- 15. Use the following table as a guide for float settings:
 - If reading on the wrench is high, the header is heavy
 - If reading on the wrench is low, the header is light

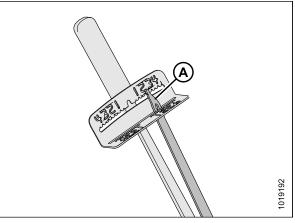


Figure 6.26: Torque Wrench

Table 6.2 Float Settings

| Header Size | Indicator Reading | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| | Cutting on the Ground | Cutting off the Ground |
| 9.1 m and 10.7 m (30 ft. and 35 ft.) | 1-1/2 to 2 | 2 to 2-1/2 |
| 12.2 m and 13.7 m (40 ft. and 45 ft.) | 2 to 2-1/2 | 2-1/2 to 3 |

- 16. Before adjusting the float spring adjustment bolts (A), rotate the spring locks (B) by loosening bolts (C).
- 17. To increase float (decrease header weight), turn both adjustment bolts (A) on the left side clockwise. Repeat adjustment at opposite side.

NOTE:

Turn each bolt pair equally.

 To decrease float (increase header weight), turn left side adjustment bolts (A) counterclockwise. Repeat at opposite side.

NOTE:

Turn each bolt pair equally.

19. Adjust the float so the wrench readings are equal on both sides of the header.

NOTE:

For 12.2 and 13.7 m (40 and 45 ft.) double-knife headers: adjust the float so the wrench readings are equal at both sides, and then loosen both right side spring bolts two turns.

- Lock adjustment bolts (A) with spring locks (B). Ensure bolt heads (A) are engaged in the spring lock cutouts. Tighten bolts (C) to secure spring locks in place.
- 21. Proceed to 6.11.2 Adjusting Wing Balance, page 128.

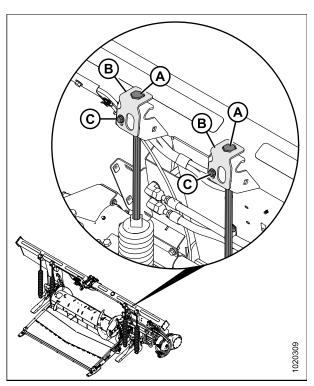


Figure 6.27: Float Adjustment (Left Side Shown)

6.11 Checking and Adjusting Header Wing Balance

IMPORTANT:

Before proceeding, the header float must be set properly. Refer to 6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 117.

The header wing balance allows the wings to react to changing ground conditions. If set too light, the wings will bounce or not follow ground contours, leaving uncut crop. If set too heavy, the end of the header will dig into the ground. After the header float has been set, the wings must be balanced for the header to follow the ground contours properly.

6.11.1 Checking Wing Balance

This procedure describes how to check the balance of each wing.

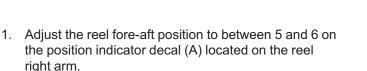
IMPORTANT:

To ensure correct wing balance readings, make sure the header float is set properly before proceeding. Refer to *6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 117.*

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before making adjustments to machine.

If a header wing has a tendency to be in a smile (A) or a frown (B) position, wing balance may require adjusting. Perform the following steps to check if the wings are not balanced, and how much adjustment is required.

The header wings are balanced when it takes an equal amount of force to move a wing up or down.



2. Lower the reel fully.

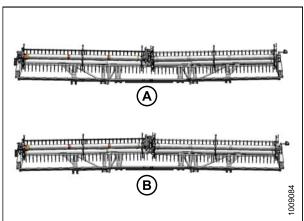


Figure 6.28: Wing Imbalance

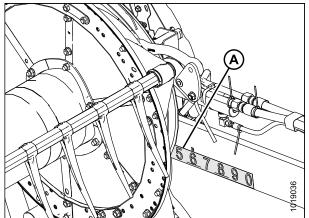


Figure 6.29: Fore-Aft Position

- 3. Adjust center-link (A) so that indicator (B) is between **B** and **C** on gauge (C).
- 4. Park combine on level ground and raise header until cutterbar is 152–254 mm (6–10 in.) off the ground.
- 5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 6. If installed, move stabilizer/transport wheels so that they are supported by header. Refer to instructions provided with the stabilizer/transport system.

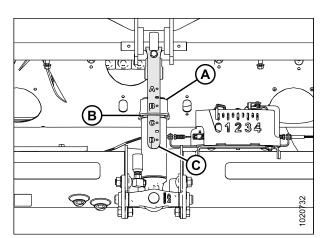


Figure 6.30: Center-Link

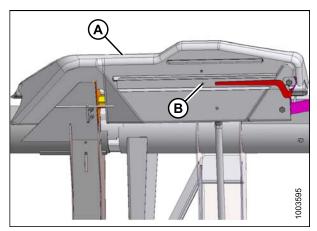


Figure 6.31: Linkage Cover

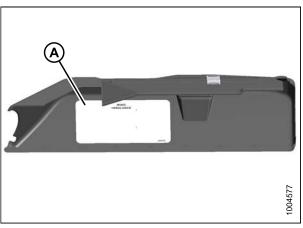


Figure 6.32: Linkage Cover

7. Remove linkage cover (A) by removing bolt (B) and rotating cover upward until inboard end can be lifted off.

NOTE:

Refer to the decal (A) inside each linkage cover.

8. Unlock the wings by moving spring handles (A) to lower (UNLOCK) position.

NOTE:

If lock link does not engage lower slot, move wing with the torque wrench until lock link moves into slot.

9. Retrieve wrench (A) from float module right leg.

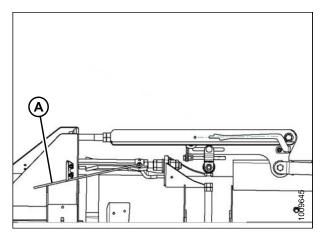


Figure 6.33: Wing Lock in UNLOCK Position

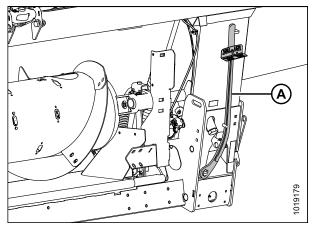


Figure 6.34: Torque Wrench

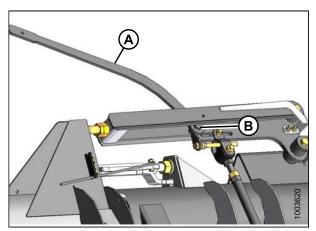


Figure 6.35: Balance Linkage

10. Place torque wrench (A) onto bolt (B).

- 11. Check that pointer (D) is properly positioned as follows:
 - a. Use wrench (A) to move bell crank (B) so that lower edge of bell crank is parallel to top-link (C).
 - b. Check that pointer (D) is lined up with the top-link (C). Bend pointer if necessary.

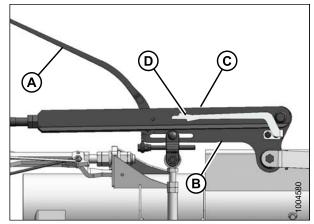


Figure 6.36: Balance Linkage

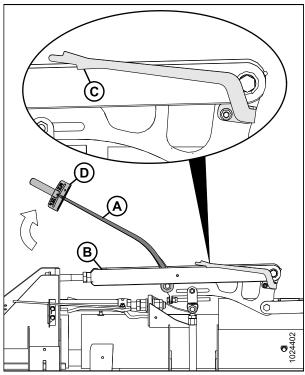


Figure 6.37: Balance Linkage

 Move wing upward with torque wrench (A) until the pointer's lower alignment tab (C) lines up with the upper edge of the top-link (B). Observe the indicator reading (D) on wrench and record it.

- Move wing downward with torque wrench (A) until the pointer's upper alignment tab (C) lines up with the lower edge of the top-link (B). Observe indicator reading (A) on the wrench and record it.
- 14. Compare the readings taken in Steps *12, page 125* and *13, page 126*.
 - If the difference between the readings is 0.5 or less, the wing is balanced and no further adjustment is required. To reinstall the linkage cover, refer to Steps *15, page 127* and *16, page 127*.
 - If the difference between the readings is more than 0.5, the wing is not balanced. Refer to 6.11.2 Adjusting Wing Balance, page 128.

Figure 6.38: Balance Linkage

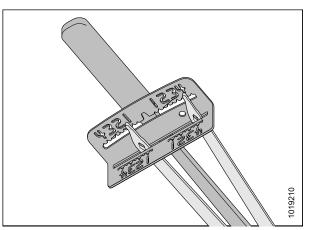


Figure 6.39: Wrench Indicator

• If the indicator range is as shown, the wing is too light.

• If the indicator range is as shown, the wing is too heavy.

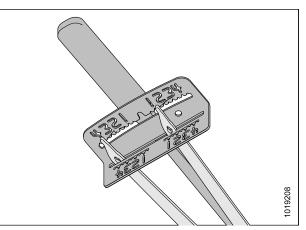


Figure 6.40: Wrench Indicator

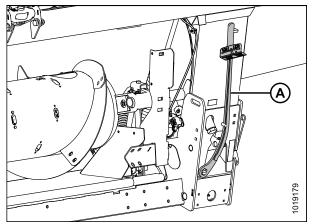


Figure 6.41: Torque Wrench

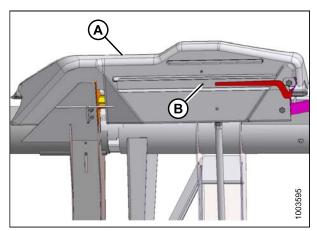


Figure 6.42: Linkage Cover

15. If no adjustment is required, place wrench (A) back onto the float module right leg.

16. If no adjustment is required, reinstall linkage cover (A) and secure it with bolt (B). If adjustment is required, refer to *6.11.2 Adjusting Wing Balance, page 128*.

6.11.2 Adjusting Wing Balance

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before making adjustments to machine.

This procedure describes how to adjust the balance of each wing. Before proceeding, refer to 6.11.1 Checking Wing Balance, page 122 to determine if adjustments are necessary.

IMPORTANT:

To ensure correct wing balance readings, make sure the header float is set properly before proceeding. Refer to *6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 117.* The float module must be sitting level before performing any adjustments.

1. Place torque wrench (A) on bolt (B). Check that wing lock (C) is in lower position.

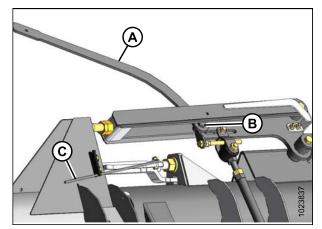


Figure 6.43: Balance Linkage (Left Side)

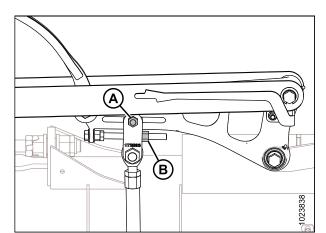


Figure 6.44: Balance Linkage (Left Side)

2. Loosen nut (A) on clevis bolt for the wing requiring adjustment as determined by the wing balance check.

3. Loosen jam nut (B).

- 4. If necessary, perform the following adjustments:
 - If the wing is too heavy, turn adjuster bolt (B) to move clevis (C) outboard (D).
 - If the wing is too light, turn adjuster bolt (B) to move clevis (C) inboard (E).
- 5. Adjust clevis (C) position if necessary until indicator readings on torque wrench are within 1/2 increment.
- 6. Tighten nut (A) on clevis bolt.
- 7. Torque jam nut (F) to 81 Nm (60 lbf·ft).

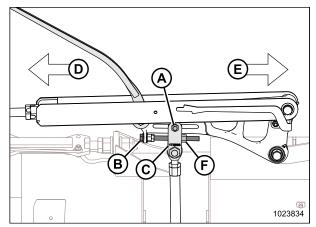


Figure 6.45: Balance Linkage (Left Side)

- 8. Move handle (A) to the upper LOCK position.
- 9. If lock does not engage, move the wing up and down with torque wrench (B) until it locks. When locked, there will be some movement in the linkage.
- 10. If the cutterbar is not straight when wings are in lock mode, then further adjustments are required.

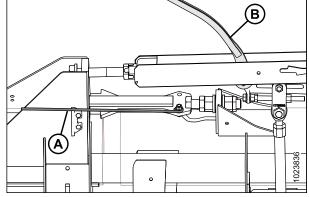


Figure 6.46: Wing Lock in Lock Position

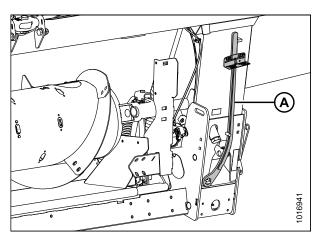


Figure 6.47: Torque Wrench in Storage Location

11. Return the torque wrench (A) to its storage location on the float module frame.

129

12. Reinstall linkage cover (A) and secure it with bolt (B).

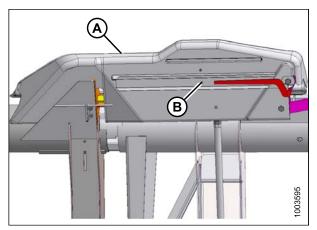


Figure 6.48: Linkage Cover

6.12 Measuring and Adjusting Reel Clearance to Cutterbar

The minimum clearance between the reel fingers and the cutterbar ensures that the reel fingers do not contact the cutterbar during operation. The clearance is set at the factory, but some adjustment may be necessary before operation.

The finger to guard/cutterbar clearances with reels fully lowered are shown in Table 6.3, page 131.

IMPORTANT:

Measurements must be taken at **both ends of each reel and at the cutterbar flex locations** with the header in full-frown mode.

| Header Width | (X) 3 mm (+/- 1/8 in.) at Reel Ends and Flex Locations | |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 9.1 m (30 ft.) | 20 mm (3/4 in.) | |
| 10.7 m (35 ft.) | 20 mm (3/4 in.) | |
| 12.2 m (40 ft.) | 20 mm (3/4 in.) | |
| 13.7 m (45 ft.) | 20 mm (3/4 in.) | |



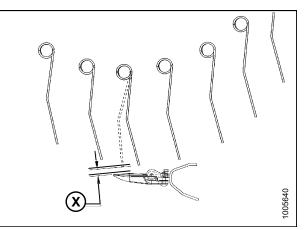


Figure 6.49: Finger Clearance

6.12.1 Measuring Reel Clearance

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under header for any reason.

- 1. Park the header on level ground.
- 2. Move spring handles (A) down to UNLOCK position.

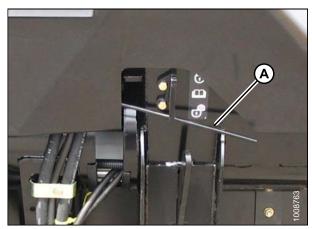


Figure 6.50: Wing Lock in Unlocked Position

- 3. Raise header and place two 150 mm (6 in.) blocks (A) under the cutterbar, just inboard of the wing flex points.
- 4. Lower header fully, allowing it to flex into full frown mode.

- 5. Set the fore-aft position to the middle position **5** on the fore-aft position decal (A).
- 6. Lower the reel fully.
- 7. Shut down the engine and remove key from the ignition.

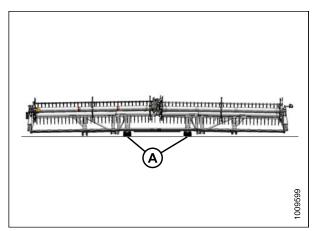


Figure 6.51: FlexDraper® Block Locations

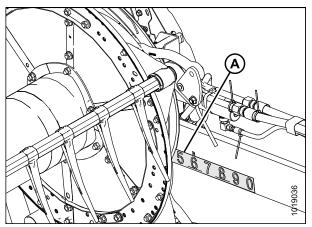


Figure 6.52: Fore-Aft Position

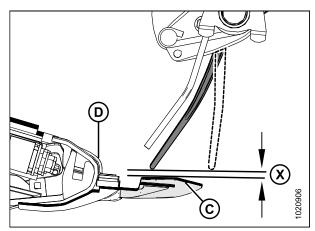


Figure 6.53: Reel Clearance

 Measure the clearance (X) at all possible points of contact (between points [C] and [D] at the ends of each reel [A] and at the flex locations [B]) as shown in Figure 6.54, page 133.

NOTE:

The reel is factory-set to provide more clearance at the center of the reel than at the ends (frown) to compensate for reel flexing.

NOTE:

When measuring reel clearance at the center of a double-reel header, measure the lowest reel.

 Check all possible points of contact between points (C) and (D). Depending on the reel fore-aft position, minimum clearance can result at the guard tine, holddown, or cutterbar. 10. Adjust the reel if necessary. Refer to 6.12.2 Adjusting Reel Clearance, page 133.

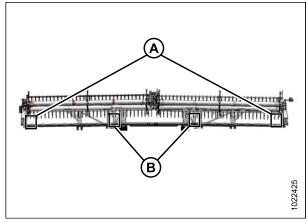


Figure 6.54: Flex Header Measurement Locations

6.12.2 Adjusting Reel Clearance

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under header for any reason.

- 1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 2. Adjust outboard reel arm lift cylinders to set clearance at outboard ends of reel as follows:
 - a. Loosen bolt (A).
 - b. Turn cylinder rod (B) out of clevis to raise reel and increase clearance to cutterbar, or turn cylinder rod into clevis to lower reel and decrease clearance.
 - c. Tighten bolt (A).
 - d. Repeat at opposite side.

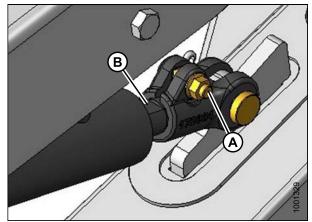


Figure 6.55: Outside Reel Arm

- 3. Adjust center arm lift cylinder stop (A) to change clearance at inboard ends of reels and clearance at flex points as follows:
 - a. Loosen nut (B).
 - b. Turn nut (C) counterclockwise to raise reel and increase clearance to cutterbar, or clockwise to lower reel and decrease clearance.
 - c. Tighten nut (B).

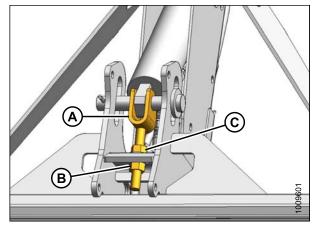


Figure 6.56: Underside of Center Arm

- 4. Check measurements and if necessary, repeat adjustment procedures.
- 5. Move reel back to ensure steel end fingers do not contact deflector shields.
- 6. If contact occurs, adjust reel upward to maintain clearance at all reel fore-aft positions. If contact cannot be avoided after adjusting the reel, trim steel end fingers to obtain proper clearance.
- 7. Periodically check for evidence of contact, and adjust clearance as required.

6.13 Adjusting Auger to Pan Clearance

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Maintain an appropriate distance between the auger and the auger pan. Too little clearance may result in the fingers or flighting contacting and damaging the feed draper or pan when operating the header at certain angles. Look for evidence of contact when greasing the float module.

- 1. Extend the center-link to the steepest header angle, and position the header 150–254 mm (6–10 in.) off the ground.
- 2. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- 3. Ensure the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

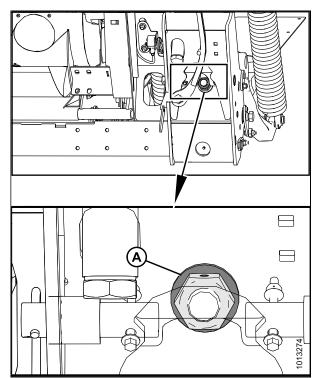


Figure 6.57: Float Lock

- 4. Before adjusting the auger to pan clearance, check the auger float position to determine how much clearance is required:
 - If the bolt head (A) is closest to the floating symbol (B), the auger is in the floating position.

IMPORTANT:

Make sure the two bolts (A) are in the same location to prevent damage to the machine during operation.

If the bolt head (A) is closest to the fixed symbol (B), the auger is in the fixed position.

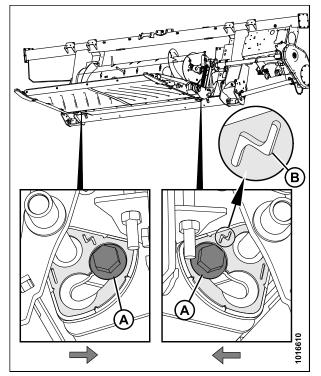


Figure 6.58: Floating Position

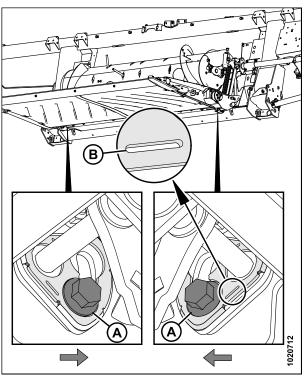


Figure 6.59: Fixed Position

٠

- 5. Loosen two nuts (B).
- 6. Turn bolt (A) clockwise to increase clearance (C); turn bolt counterclockwise to decrease clearance.
 - If feed auger is in rigid position, set clearance to 22–26 mm (7/8–1.0 in.).
 - If feed auger is in floating position, set clearance to 11–15 mm (7/16–5/8 in.).

NOTE:

The clearance increases between 25-40 mm (1-1-1/2 in.) when the center-link is fully retracted.

7. Repeat Steps *5, page 137* and *6, page 137* for the opposite end of the auger.

IMPORTANT:

Adjusting one side of the auger can affect the other side so recheck both sides after final adjustment is made.

8. Tighten nuts (B) on both ends of the feed auger. Torque the nuts to 93–99 Nm (68–73 lbf·ft).

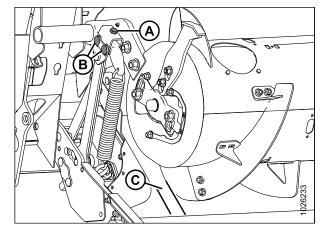


Figure 6.60: Auger Clearance

6.14 Adjusting Draper Tension

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under machine for any reason.

1. Ensure the white indicator bar (A) is at the halfway point in the window.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 2. Start the engine and fully raise the header.
- 3. Shut down the combine and remove the key from the ignition.
- 4. Engage the header safety props.
- 5. Ensure the draper guide (the rubber track on the underside of the draper) is properly engaged in the groove (A) on the drive roller.

6. Ensure the idler roller (A) is between the draper guides (B).

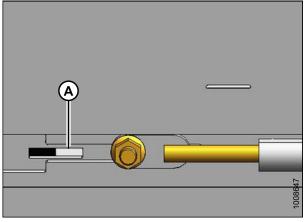


Figure 6.61: Left Side Tension Adjuster Shown – Right Side Opposite

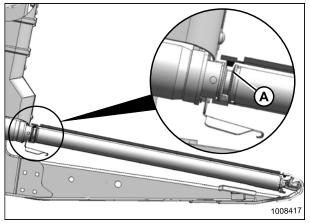


Figure 6.62: Drive Roller

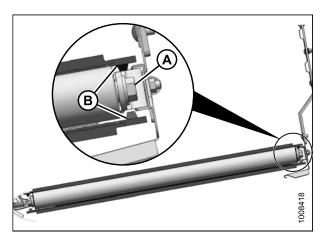


Figure 6.63: Idler Roller

PERFORMING PREDELIVERY CHECKS

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** adjust nut (C). This nut is used for draper alignment only.

- 7. To loosen the adjuster bolt (A), turn it counterclockwise. The white indicator bar (B) will move outboard in the direction of arrow (D) to indicate that the draper is loosening. Loosen until the white indicator bar is at the halfway point in the window.
- To tighten the adjuster bolt (A), turn it clockwise. The white indicator bar (B) will move inboard in the direction of arrow (E) to indicate that the draper is tightening. Tighten until the white indicator bar is at the halfway point in the window.

IMPORTANT:

- To avoid premature failure of the draper, draper rollers, and/or tightener components, do **NOT** operate with the tension set so the white bar is not visible.
- To prevent scooping dirt, ensure the draper is tight enough that it does not sag below the point where the cutterbar contacts the ground.

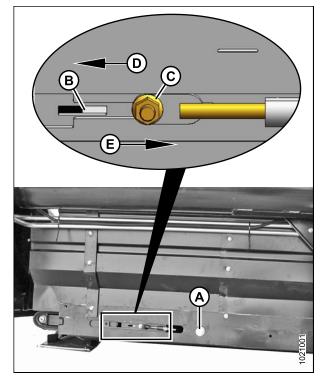


Figure 6.64: Left Side Tension Adjuster Shown – Right Side Opposite

6.15 Checking Draper Seal

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

- 1. Lower header to working position. Stop engine, and remove key from ignition.
- 2. Check that clearance (A) between draper (B) and cutterbar (C) is 0–3 mm (1/8 in.). Take measurements at deck support locations. Refer to chart and illustration on following page for approximate support locations.

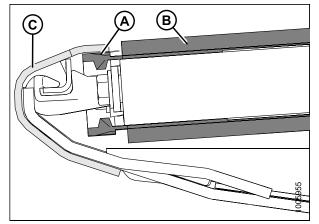
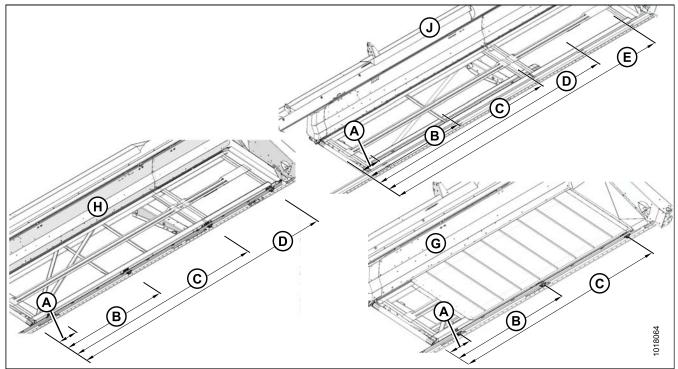


Figure 6.65: Draper Seal

| Header | Approximate Location of Support from Drive Roller | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--|
| Size | Α | В | С | D | E | |
| 9.1 m (30 ft.) (G) | 354 mm (13-15/16 in.) | 1773 mm (69-13/16 in.) | 3191 mm (125-5/8 in.) | _ | _ | |
| 10.7 m | 354 mm | 1550 mm | 2747 mm | 3949 mm | _ | |
| (35 ft.) (H) | (13-15/16 in.) | (61 in.) | (108-3/16 in.) | (155-7/16 in.) | | |
| 12.2 m | 354 mm | 1809 mm | 3258 mm | 4710 mm | _ | |
| (40 ft.) (H) | (13-15/16 in.) | (71-1/8 in.) | (128-1/4 in.) | (185-7/16 in.) | | |
| 13.7 m | 354 mm | 1864 mm | 3486 mm | 4483 mm | 5479 mm | |
| (45 ft.) (J) | (13-15/16 in.) | (73-3/8 in.) | (137-1/4 in.) | (176-1/2 in.) | (215-11/16 in.) | |

Table 6.4 Deck Support Locations

214685





6.16 Lubricating the Header

Table 6.5 Recommended Lubricant

| Specification | Description | Use |
|------------------|--|--|
| SAE multipurpose | High temperature, extreme pressure (EP2) performance with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base | As required unless otherwise specified |
| SAE multipurpose | High temperature, extreme pressure (EP) performance with 10% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base | Driveline slip-joints |

6.16.1 Greasing Procedure

Greasing points are identified on the machine by decals showing a grease gun and grease interval in hours of operation. Grease point layout decals are located on the header and on the right side of the float module.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

1. Wipe grease fitting with a clean cloth before greasing to avoid injecting dirt and grit.

IMPORTANT:

Use clean, high-temperature, extreme-pressure grease only.

- 2. Inject grease through fitting with grease gun until grease overflows fitting (except where noted).
- 3. Leave excess grease on fitting to keep out dirt.
- 4. Replace any loose or broken fittings immediately.
- 5. Remove and thoroughly clean any fitting that will not take grease. Also clean lubricant passageway. Replace fitting if necessary.

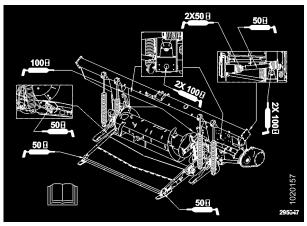


Figure 6.67: FM100 Grease Point Layout Decal

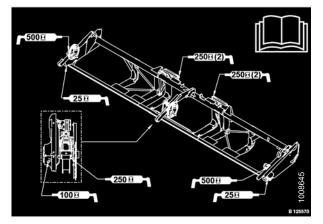


Figure 6.68: FD1 Series Grease Point Layout Decal

6.16.2 Lubrication Points

Knifehead

IMPORTANT:

Overgreasing can cause the knife to bend and make contact with the guards closest to the knifehead. Check for signs of excessive heating on first few guards after greasing. If required, relieve some pressure by removing the grease fitting.

- To prevent binding and/or excessive wear caused by • knife pressing on guards, do NOT overgrease the knifehead (A).
- Apply only 1–2 pumps of grease with a grease gun, or • just until the knifehead starts to move away from the arm. Do NOT use an electric grease gun.
- If more than 6–8 pumps of the grease gun are required to fill the cavity, replace the seal in the knifehead.
- Check for signs of excessive heating on first few guards ٠ after greasing. If required, relieve pressure by pressing check-ball in grease fitting.

NOTE:

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base grease unless otherwise specified.



Figure 6.69: Knifehead Single Knife – One Place

Double Knife – Two Places

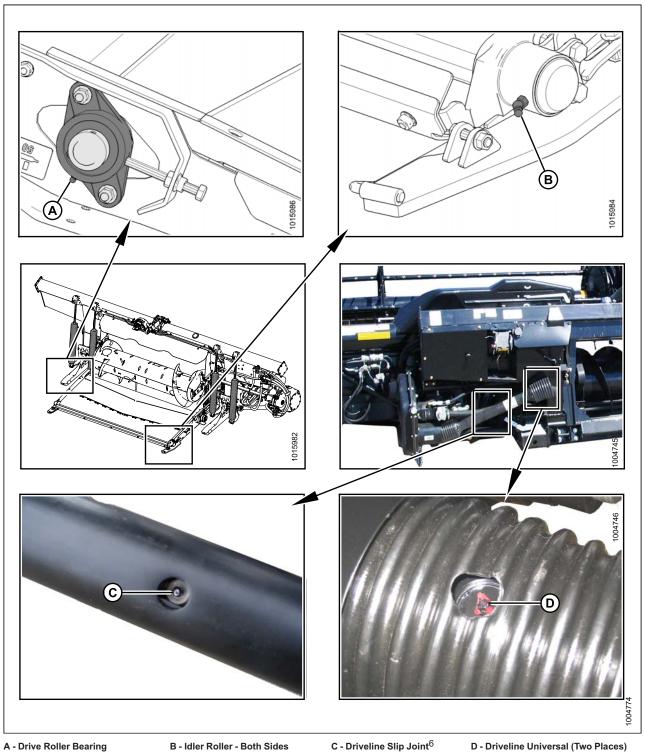
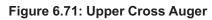
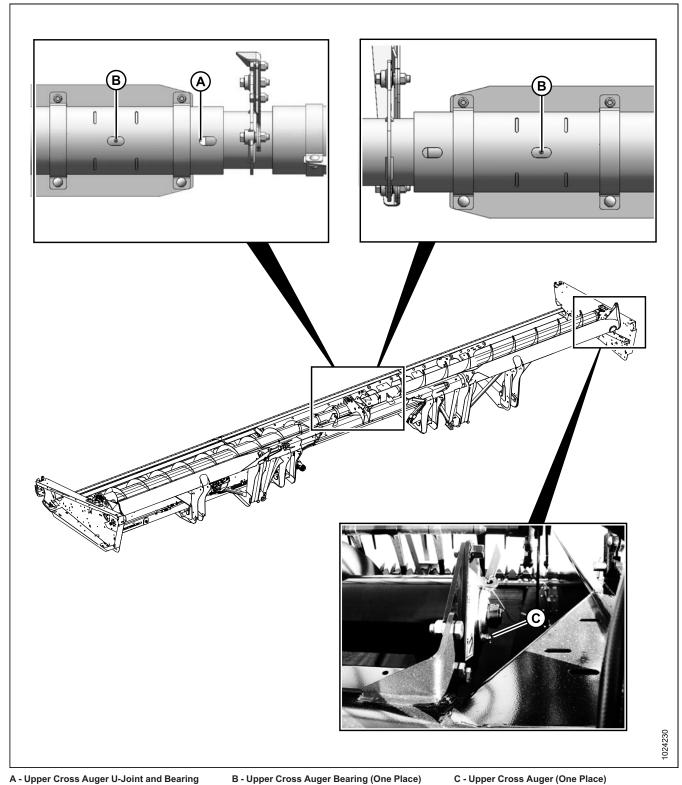


Figure 6.70: Drive Roller Bearing, Idler Roller, Slip Joint, and Driveline Universal

6. 10% moly grease is recommended for the driveline slip joint.





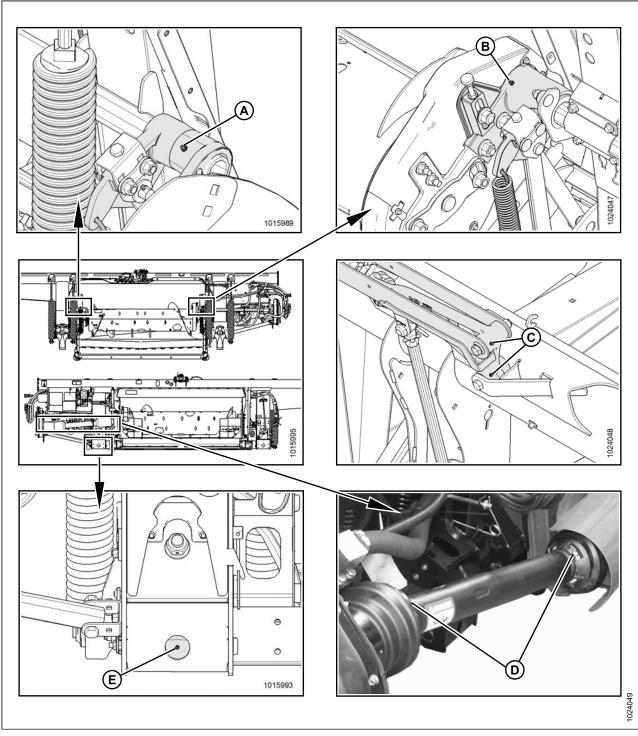


Figure 6.72: Float Pivot, Driveline Guard, Flex Linkage, and Auger Pivot

A - Auger Pivot (First Place) D - Driveline Guard (Two Places) B - Auger Pivot (Second Place) E - Float Pivot (Two Places)

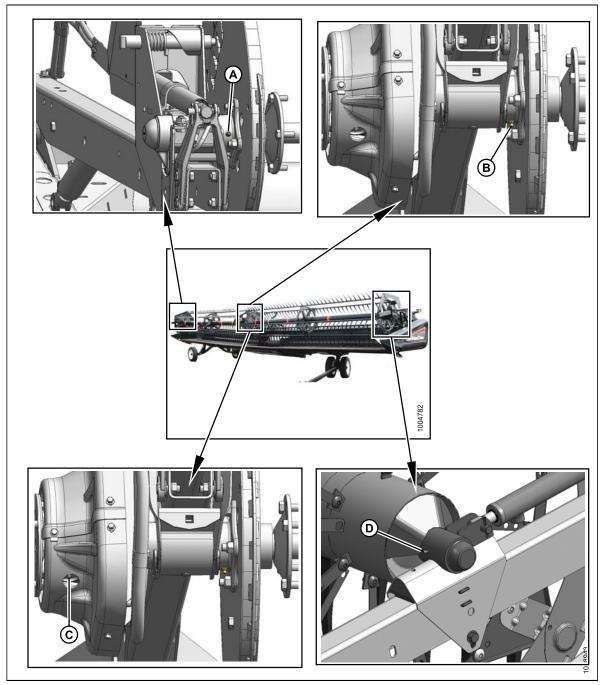
C - Flex Linkage (Two Places) (Both Sides)

PERFORMING PREDELIVERY CHECKS

IMPORTANT:

The reel U-joint (C) has an extended lubrication cross and bearing kit. Stop greasing when greasing becomes difficult or if U-joint stops taking grease. **OVERGREASING WILL DAMAGE U-JOINT.** Six to eight pumps is sufficient at first grease (factory). As U-joint wears and requires more than six pumps, grease the joint more often.

Figure 6.73: Reel Shaft Bearings



A - Reel Shaft Right Bearing (One Place)

C - Reel Universal (One Place)

- B Reel Center Bearing (One Place)
- D Reel Shaft Left Bearing (One Place)

21 (C

PERFORMING PREDELIVERY CHECKS

Figure 6.74: Rear Wheel Axle, Wheel Bearings, Frame/Wheel Pivot, and Front Wheel Pivot

A - Wheel Bearings (Four Places)

B - Front Wheel Pivot (One Place)

C - Frame/Wheel Pivot (One Place) Both Sides

1017324

6.17 Checking and Adjusting Endshields

Endshields are subject to expansion or contraction caused by large temperature variations. The position of the top pin and lower latch can be adjusted to compensate for dimensional changes.

Checking the endshield:

1. Check gap (X) between front end of the shields and the header frame and compare to the values in Table 6.6, page 149.

| • | | | | |
|---|---------------------|--|--|--|
| Temperature in °C (°F) | Gap (X) mm (in.) | | | |
| 7 (45) | 13–18 (1/2–23/32) | | | |
| 18 (65) | 10–15 (3/8–19/32) | | | |
| 29 (85) | 7–12 (9/32–15/32) | | | |
| 41 (105) | 4–9 (5/32–11/32) | | | |

2. If the endshield gap is correct, skip to the next procedure. If adjustment is required, proceed to Step *1*, *page 149*.

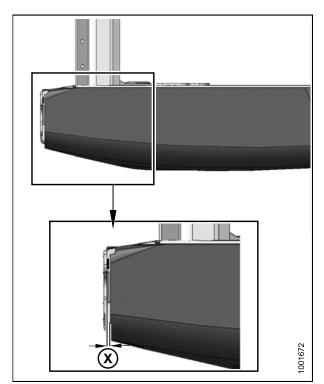


Figure 6.75: Gap between Endshield and Header Frame

Opening the endshield:

- 1. To unlock the shield, push the release lever (A) located on the backside of the endshield.
- 2. Pull endshield open using handle depression (B).

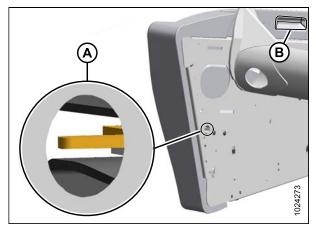


Figure 6.76: Left Endshield

PERFORMING PREDELIVERY CHECKS

 Pull endshield at handle depression (A). Endshield is retained by a hinge tab (B) and will open in direction (C).

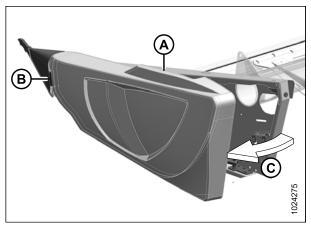


Figure 6.77: Left Endshield

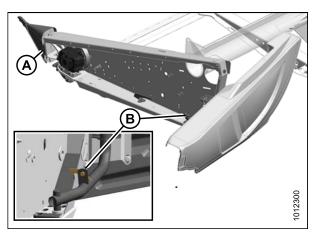


Figure 6.78: Left Endshield

4. Pull the endshield free of hinge tab (A) if additional clearance is required, and swing shield towards the rear of the header.

5. Engage safety catch (B) on hinge arm to secure the shield in fully-open position.

Adjusting the endshield gap:

1. Loosen the four bolts (A) on support tube bracket (B).

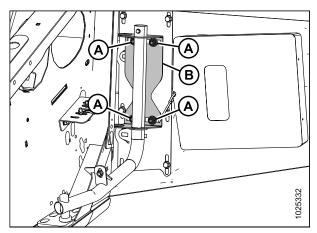


Figure 6.79: Left Endshield Support Tube

- 2. Loosen the three bolts (A) on latch assembly (B).
- 3. Adjust latch assembly (B) to achieve the desired gap between the front end of the shield and the header frame. Refer to Table *6.6, page 149* for the recommended endshield gap at various temperatures.

5. Tighten the four bolts (A) on support tube bracket (B).

4. Tighten the three bolts (A) on the latch assembly.

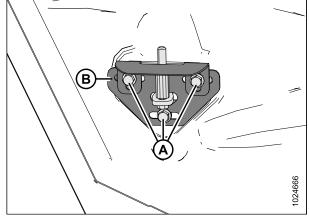


Figure 6.80: Left Endshield Latch Assembly

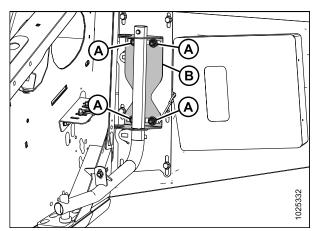
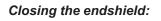


Figure 6.81: Left Endshield Support Tube



6. Close endshield.

- 1. Disengage lock (B) to allow endshield to move.
- 2. Insert front of endshield behind hinge tab (A) and into divider cone.

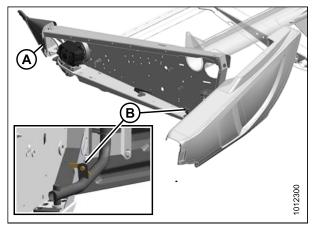


Figure 6.82: Left Endshield

- 3. Swing endshield in direction (A) into closed position. Engage lock with a firm push.
- 4. Verify that endshield is locked.

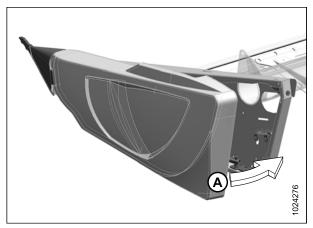


Figure 6.83: Left Endshield

6.18 Checking Manuals

Check the manual case contents. The manual case is located inside the left endshield.

- 1. Open the left endshield. Remove the cable tie on manual case (A).
- 2. Confirm that the case contains the following manuals:
 - FD1 Series FlexDraper® Operator's Manual
 - FD1 Series FlexDraper® Quick Card
 - FD1 Series FlexDraper[®] with FM100 Float Module Parts Catalog
- 3. Close case and endshield.

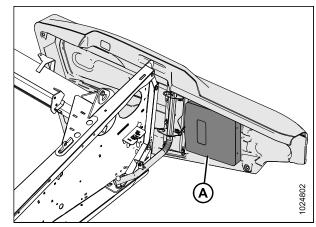


Figure 6.84: Manual Case

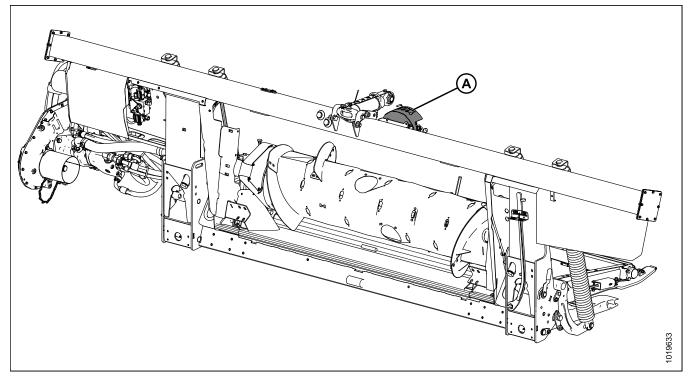
Chapter 7: Setting up Auto Header Height Control

7.1 Auto Header Height Control (AHHC)

MacDon's auto header height control (AHHC) feature works in conjunction with the AHHC option available on certain combine models.

A sensor is installed in the float indicator box (A) on the FM100 Float Module. This sensor sends a signal to the combine allowing it to maintain a consistent cutting height and an optimum float as the header follows ground contours.

Figure 7.1: FM100 Float Module



FM100 Float Modules are factory-equipped for AHHC; however, before using the AHHC feature, you must do the following:

1. Ensure that the AHHC sensor's output voltage range is appropriate for the combine.

For more information, refer to 7.1.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements, page 157.

- 2. Prepare the combine to use the AHHC feature (applies only to some combine models—refer to the instructions for your combine).
- 3. Calibrate the AHHC system so that the combine can correctly interpret data from the height sensor on the float module (refer to the instructions for your combine).

NOTE:

Once calibration is complete, you are ready to use the AHHC feature in the field. Individual combine settings can improve AHHC performance (refer to your combine instruction manual).

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

Refer to the following instructions for your specific combine model:

- 7.1.3 Case IH 5088/6088/7088 Combines, page 170
- 7.1.5 Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230 and 7240/8240/9240 Combines, page 181
- 7.1.6 Challenger and Massey Ferguson 6 and 7 Series Combines, page 197
- 7.1.7 CLAAS 500 Series Combines, page 205
- 7.1.8 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines, page 213
- 7.1.9 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines, page 223
- 7.1.10 Gleaner S9 Series Combines, page 232
- 7.1.11 John Deere 60 Series Combines, page 246
- 7.1.12 John Deere 70 Series Combines, page 254
- 7.1.13 John Deere S and T Series Combines, page 261
- 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290
- 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300

7.1.1 Sensor Operation

The position sensors supplied with the auto header height control (AHHC) system are hall-effect sensors containing sealed connectors. Normal operating signal voltages for the sensors fall between 10% (0.5 VDC) and 90% (4.5 VDC). An increase in sensor voltage correlates to an increase in header height.

Sensor errors result in a 0 V signal, indicating a faulty sensor or incorrect supply voltage.

7.1.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be within a specific voltage range for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

Table 7.1 Combine Voltage Limits

| Combine | Low Voltage Limit | High Voltage Limit | Range (Difference between High and Low Limits) |
|--|-------------------|--------------------|--|
| Challenger, Gleaner A, Massey Ferguson | 0.5 V | 4.5 V | 2.5 V |
| Case IH 5088/6088/7088, 5130/6130/7130, 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, and 7240/8240/9240 | 0.5 V | 4.5 V | 2.5 V |
| Case IH 2588/2577 | 2.8 V | 7.2 V | 4.0 V |
| Gleaner R and S Series | 0.5 V | 4.5 V | 2.5 V |
| John Deere 60, 70, S, and T Series | 0.5 V | 4.5 V | 2.5 V |
| CLAAS 500/600/700 Series | 0.5 V | 4.5 V | 2.5 V |
| New Holland CR/CX - 5 V system | 0.7 V | 4.3 V | 2.5 V |
| New Holland CR/CX - 10 V system | 2.8 V | 7.2 V | 4.1–4.4 V |

NOTE:

Some combine models do not support checking sensor output voltage from the cab (early Case 23/2588 series, CLAAS 500/600/700 Series). For these models, check output voltage manually. Refer to *Manually Checking Voltage Range: One-Sensor System, page 158* or *Manually Checking Voltage Range: Two-Sensor System, page 160*.

10 Volt Adapter (MD #B6421) – New Holland Combines Only

New Holland combines with a 10 V system require the 10 V adapter (A) (MD #B6421) for proper calibration of the auto header height control (AHHC) feature.

If a 10 V New Holland combine does not have the adapter installed, the AHHC output will always read 0 V, regardless of sensor position.

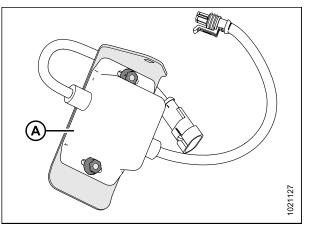


Figure 7.2: 10 V Adapter (MD #B6421)

Use a voltmeter to measure the voltage between Pin 1 (power) and Pin 2 (ground) wires at the AHHC sensor (A). This will determine whether the combine has a 5 V system or a 10 V system.

NOTE:

The combine key must be in the ON position, but the engine does not need to be running.

The three possible voltage readings are as follows:

- 0 V combine key is in OFF position, or there is a faulty harness/bad connection
- 5 V standard combine reading
- 10 V 10 V combine reading; adapter (MD #B6421) is required



The one-sensor system is standard for the FM100 Float Module. If equipped with the optional two-sensor system, refer to *Manually Checking Voltage Range: Two-Sensor System, page 160*.

The output voltage range of the auto header height control (AHHC) sensors in some combines can be checked from the cab. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual or the AHHC instructions later in this document.

To manually check the sensor's output voltage range, follow these steps:

- 1. Extend guard angle fully; the header angle indicator should be at D.
- 2. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 3. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

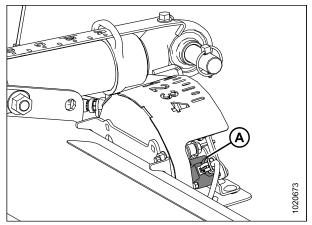


Figure 7.3: Float Indicator Box

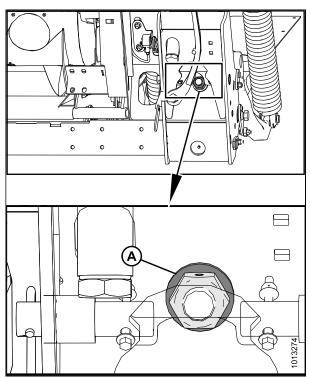


Figure 7.4: Down Stop Washer

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

4. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on the float indicator is on **0**.

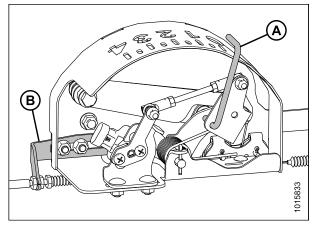


Figure 7.5: Float Indicator Box

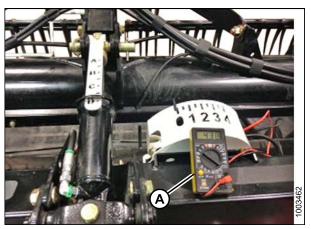


Figure 7.6: Measuring Voltage at Float Indicator Box

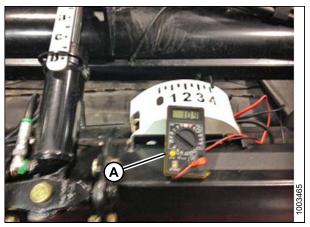


Figure 7.7: Measuring Voltage at Float Indicator Box

8. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162*.

5. Use a voltmeter (A) to measure the voltage between the ground (Pin 2) and signal (Pin 3) wires at the AHHC sensor in the float indicator box. Ensure it is at the high voltage limit for the combine. Refer to Table *7.1, page 157*.

NOTE:

The wiring harness connector must be attached to the sensor. Do **NOT** disconnect it.

6. Fully lower the combine feeder house, and float the header up off the down stops (float indicator should be at **4**, and the float module should be fully separated from the header).

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

7. Use a voltmeter (A) to measure the voltage between the ground and signal wires at the AHHC sensor in the float indicator box. It should be at the low voltage limit for the combine. Refer to Table *7.1, page 157*.

NOTE:

The wiring harness connector must be attached to the sensor. Do **NOT** disconnect it.

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

Manually Checking Voltage Range: Two-Sensor System

FM100 Float Modules equipped with the optional two-sensor system have a left and right sensor located on the back frame of the float module.

To manually check the sensor's output voltage range, follow these steps:

- 1. Extend guard angle fully; the header angle indicator should be at **D**.
- 2. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 3. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

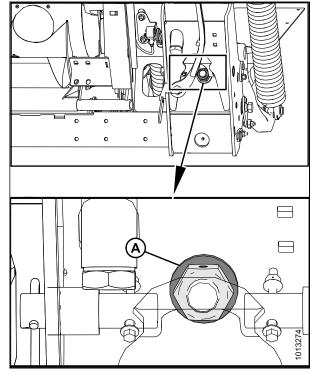


Figure 7.8: Down Stop Washer

Figure 7.9: Float Indicator Box

4. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on the float indicator is on **0**.

5. Use a voltmeter to measure the voltage between the ground (Pin 2) and signal (Pin 3) wires of the AHHC sensor (A) at the back of the float module side frame. Ensure it is at the high voltage limit for the combine. Refer to Table *7.1, page 157*.

NOTE:

The wiring harness connector must be attached to the sensor. Do **NOT** disconnect it.

6. Repeat at the opposite side.

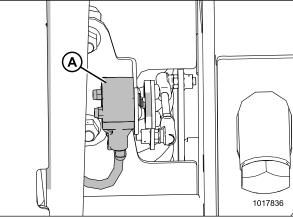


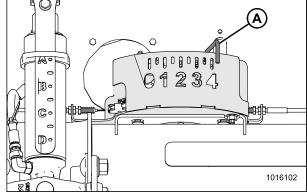
Figure 7.10: Optional Two-Sensor Kit – Right Sensor

 $\tilde{}$

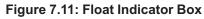
Fully lower the combine feeder house, and float the header up off the down stops (float indicator [A] should be at 4, and the float module should be fully separated from the header).

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.



。



 Using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (Pin 2) and signal (Pin 3) wires of the AHHC sensor (A) at the back of the side frame. Ensure it is at the low voltage limit for the combine. Refer to Table 7.1, page 157.

NOTE:

The wiring harness connector must be attached to the sensor. Do **NOT** disconnect it.

- 9. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: Two-Sensor System, page 163.*
- 10. Repeat at the opposite side.

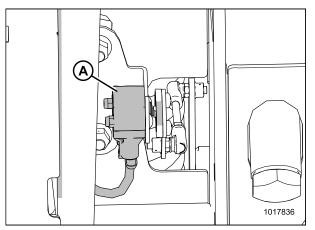


Figure 7.12: Optional Two-Sensor Kit – Right Sensor

Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System

Follow this procedure if you have checked the voltage range (either manually or from the cab) and found that the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits or that the range between the low and high limits is insufficient.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

- 1. Follow these steps to adjust the high voltage limit:
 - a. Extend guard angle fully; the header angle indicator should be at **D**.
 - b. Position header 152–254 mm (6–10 in.) above the ground; the float indicator should be at **0**.
 - c. Check the high voltage limit using the combine display or a voltmeter. Refer to Table 7.1, page 157.
 - d. Loosen sensor-mounting nuts (A).
 - e. Slide sensor support (B) to right to increase high voltage limit or to left to decrease it.
 - f. Tighten sensor-mounting nuts (A).
- 2. Follow these steps to adjust the low voltage limit:
 - a. Extend guard angle fully; the header angle indicator should be at **D**.
 - b. Fully lower header on the ground; the float indicator should be at 4.
 - c. Check the low voltage limit using the combine display or voltmeter. Refer to Table *7.1, page 157*.
 - d. Loosen sensor-mounting nuts (A).
 - e. Rotate sensor (B) clockwise to increase low voltage limit and counterclockwise to decrease it.
 - f. Tighten sensor-mounting nuts (A).

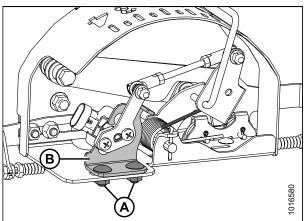


Figure 7.13: AHHC Sensor Assembly

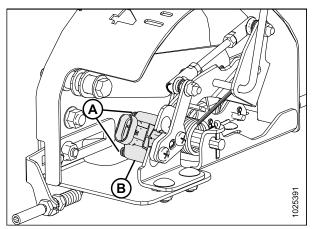


Figure 7.14: AHHC Sensor Assembly

3. After making adjustments, recheck both the upper and lower voltage limits to make sure they are within the required range according to Table 7.1, page 157.

Adjusting Voltage Limits: Two-Sensor System



To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

- 1. Extend guard angle fully; the header angle indicator should be at **D**.
- 2. Position header 150–254 mm (6–10 in.) above the ground; the float indicator should be at **0**.
- 3. Follow these steps to adjust left sensor voltage:
 - a. Loosen sensor-mounting nuts (A).
 - b. Rotate sensor (B) counterclockwise to lower the voltage. Rotate sensor clockwise to raise the voltage.
 - c. Check that the left sensor is at the correct high voltage limit.
 - d. Tighten sensor-mounting nuts (A).

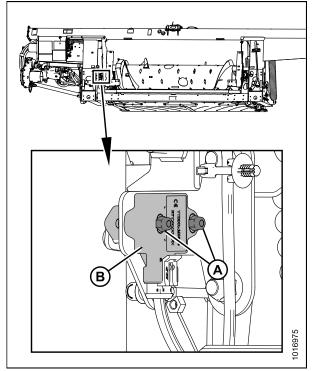


Figure 7.15: Optional Two-Sensor Kit – Left Sensor

- 4. Follow these steps to adjust right sensor voltage:
 - a. Loosen sensor mounting nuts (A).
 - b. Rotate sensor (B) clockwise to lower the voltage. Rotate sensor counterclockwise to raise the voltage.
 - c. Check that the right sensor is at the correct high voltage limit.
 - d. Tighten sensor mounting nuts (A).

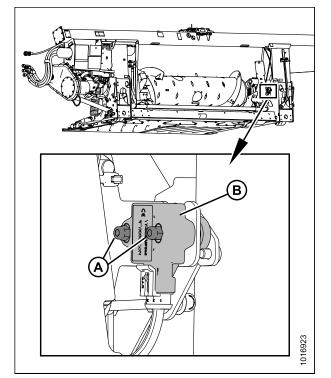


Figure 7.16: Optional Two-Sensor Kit – Right Sensor

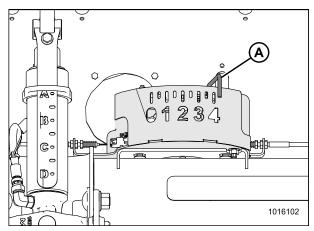


Figure 7.17: Float Indicator Box

- 5. Fully lower the header; the float indicator (A) should be at **4**.
- 6. Check that both sensors are at the correct low voltage limit.

Replacing the Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) Sensor (One-Sensor System)



To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

- 1. Disconnect wiring harness (A) from existing sensor (B).
- 2. Remove the two screws (C) that secure sensor (B) to sensor arm (D).

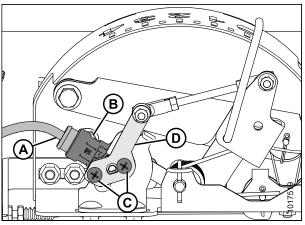


Figure 7.18: AHHC Sensor

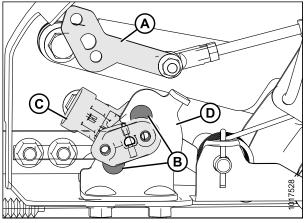


Figure 7.19: AHHC Sensor

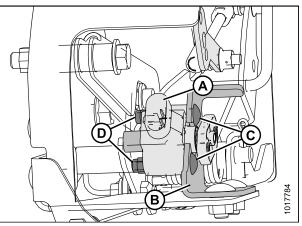


Figure 7.20: AHHC Sensor

- 3. Swing sensor arm (A) upwards to gain access to the two bolts (B) securing sensor (C) to bracket (D).
- 4. Remove the two bolts and nuts (B) that secure sensor (C) to bracket (D).
- 5. Pull sensor (C) away from bracket (D).

IMPORTANT:

To avoid damaging the new sensor, install sensor as follows:

- 6. Position the new sensor (A) on bracket (B).
- 7. Secure with two bolts (C) and nuts (D).

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

- 8. Attach sensor arm (A) to sensor (B) and secure with two screws (C).
- 9. Reconnect the wiring harness to plug (B) on the sensor.
- 10. Check the voltage range of the new sensor, and adjust if necessary. Refer to:
 - Manually Checking Voltage Range: One-Sensor System, page 158
 - Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162

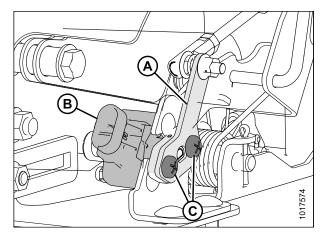


Figure 7.21: AHHC Sensor

Replacing Float Indicator Cable

If the float indicator cable is damaged, replace it following these instructions. You will need to order one float indicator cable (MD #187658) from your MacDon Dealer.

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed for illustration purposes.

- On the left front side of the float module, remove nut, washer, and bolt (A) securing the cable eye on the end of float indicator cable (B) to the float lever. Retain hardware for reinstallation.
- 2. Loosen jam nuts (C) on float indicator cable (B), and then disconnect the cable from cable stop support (D).
- 3. Repeat steps on right front side of the float module.

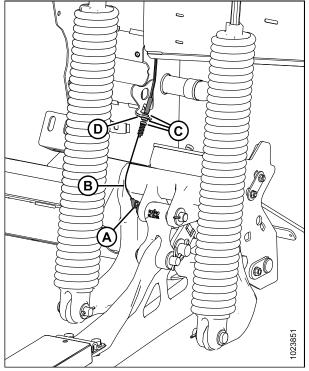


Figure 7.22: Left Front Side of Float Adapter – Right Side is Opposite

- 4. Loosen jam nuts (A) securing float indicator cable (B) to both sides of the float indicator bottom support, and then disconnect the cable from the support.
- 5. Float indicator cable (B) is routed around three pulleys (C) in the float indicator box. Remove the cable and discard.

NOTE:

Pulleys are hidden by other parts in the illustration. Their approximate location is identified.

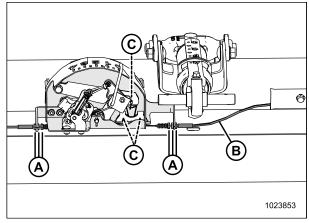
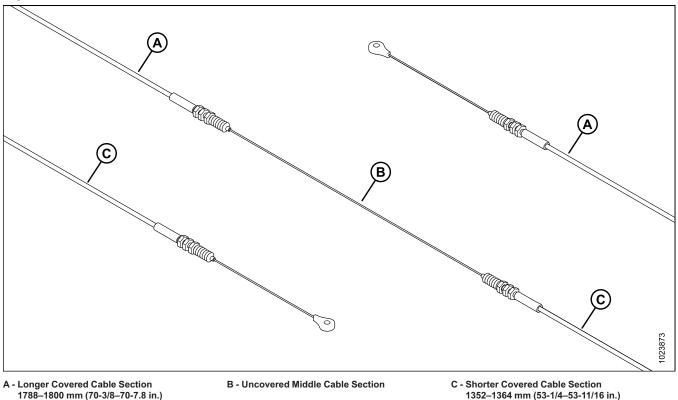


Figure 7.23: Float Indicator Box

6. Examine the new float indicator cable (MD #187658). You will see that it is divided into sections. The longer covered section (A) should be installed on the left side of the float module, the middle uncovered section (B) should be installed in the float indicator box, and the shorter covered section (C) should be installed on the right side of the float module. Installation instructions are provided in the following steps.

Figure 7.24: Float Indicator Cable



7. With the longer end of the new float indicator cable on the left, loop the middle section of the cable (the section in between the innermost boot seals and jam nuts) (A) around the three pulleys in the float indicator box as shown at right.

- Secure the left side of the new float indicator cable (A) to the left side of the float indicator bottom support as follows:
 - a. On float indicator cable (A), jam nuts and boot seals are positioned in four locations. Select the second location from the left.
 - b. Remove boot seal (B), and slide cable (A) through the slot on the left side of the float indicator bottom support (C).
 - c. Insert the threaded end of cable housing (D) into the hole in support (C), and then thread boot seal (B) onto the housing.
 - d. Tighten jam nuts (E).
- 9. Route the left end of the new float indicator cable (A) through hose holder (B), behind gussets (C) at the top of the inboard float spring, through hole (D) into the float module hydraulic/electrical enclosure, and then back through hole (E) in the bottom of the float module hydraulic/electrical enclosure to the front side of the float module.

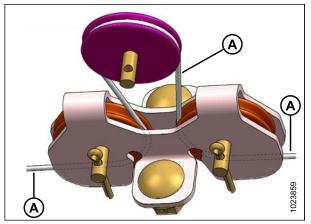


Figure 7.25: Cable Routing around Pulleys

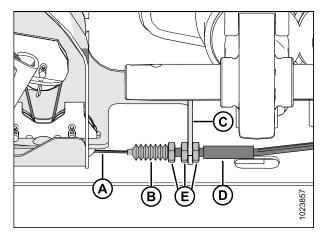


Figure 7.26: Float Indicator Cable Secured to Left Side of the Float Indicator Bottom Support – Right Side is Opposite

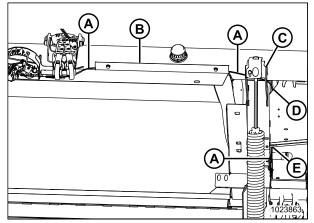
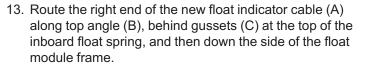


Figure 7.27: Cable Routing on Left Side of Float Module

- 10. Slide new float indicator cable (B) through the slot in the cable stop support (D), and secure in place with the cable boot seal and jam nuts (C).
- Secure the cable eye on the end of float indicator cable (B) to the float lever with the nut, washer, and bolt (A) retained from Step *1, page 166*. The washer goes between the cable eye and the bolt.
- 12. Torque nut to 8.6 Nm (76 lbf·in.).



- 14. Slide new float indicator cable (A) through the slot in the cable stop support (D), and secure in place with the cable boot and jam nuts (E).
- 15. Secure the cable eye on the end of float indicator cable (A) to the float lever with the nut, washer, and bolt retained from Step 1, page 166. The washer goes between the cable eye and the bolt head. Refer to previous illustration.
- 16. Torque nut to 8.6 Nm (76 lbf·in.).

NOTE:

The cable eye must remain free to turn on the bolt.

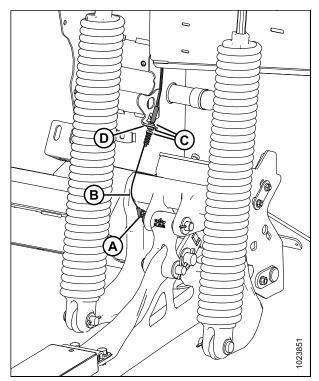


Figure 7.28: Left Front Side of Float Module – Right Side is Opposite

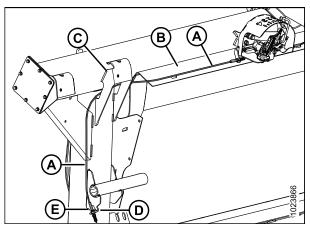


Figure 7.29: Cable Routing on Right Side of Float Module

17. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on float indicator is on 0.

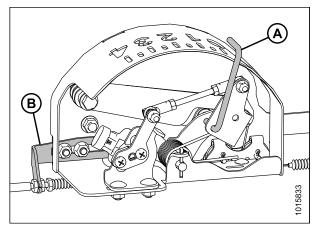


Figure 7.30: Float Indicator Box

7.1.3 Case IH 5088/6088/7088 Combines

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 5088/6088/7088)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform ground calibration with center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to D.
- 2. Set the float. Refer to operator's manual for instructions. Position fore-aft in mid span.
- 3. Start the combine engine, but do **NOT** engage separator or feeder house.
- 4. Locate HEADER CONTROL switch (A) on the right console, and set to HT (this is AHHC mode).

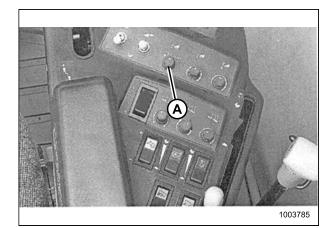


Figure 7.31: Right Console

- 5. Press HEADER LOWER switch (A) on the control handle until the float module and header are fully lowered. You may need to hold the switch for several seconds.
- 6. Press HEADER RAISE switch (A) on the control handle. The header should stop at about the halfway point. Continue holding the HEADER RAISE switch, and the header will rise until the feeder house reaches its upper limit. The AHHC system is now calibrated.

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

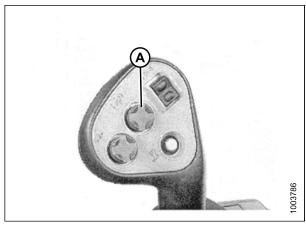


Figure 7.32: Control Handle (Case IH 2300/2500)

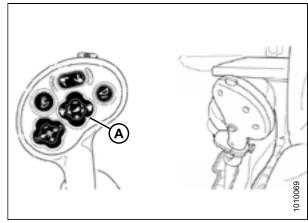


Figure 7.33: Control Handle (Case IH 5088/6088/7088)

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height (Case IH 5088/6088/7088)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Use HEADER SETTINGS key (M) to display the HEADER SENSITIVITY CHANGE page as shown in Figure *7.35, page 172*.
- Use the UP or DOWN keys (E) or (H) to adjust the highlighted item. The height sensitivity setting range is 0 (least sensitive) to 250 (most sensitive) in increments of 10.

Adjustments take effect immediately. Use the CANCEL key to return to the original settings.

- 3. Use HEADER SETTINGS key (M) to highlight the next changeable item.
- 4. Use ENTER key (D) to save changes and return to the monitor screen. If there are no changes, the screen will return to the monitor screen after 5 seconds.



Figure 7.34: Combine Controls

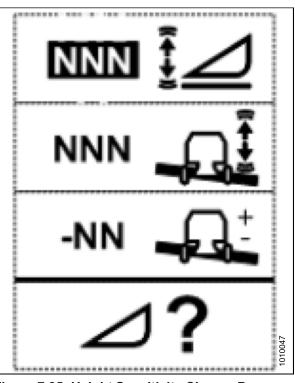


Figure 7.35: Height Sensitivity Change Page

7.1.4 Case IH 5130/6130/7130 and 5140/6140/7140 Mid-Range Combines

Setting up the Header on the Combine Display (Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140)

1. On the main page of the combine display, select TOOLBOX (A).

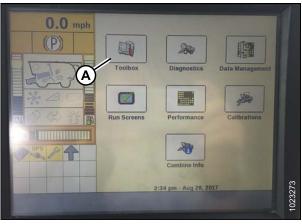
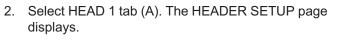


Figure 7.36: Case IH Combine Display



NOTE:

To locate the HEAD 1 tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (C).

3. From the CUTTING TYPE menu (B), select PLATFORM.

- 4. Select HEAD 2 tab (A). The HEADER SETUP 2 page displays.
- 5. From the HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT menu (B), select NOT INSTALLED.
- 6. If you are operating a D1 Draper Header, from the DRAPER GRAIN HEADER STYLE menu (C), select RIGID 2000 SERIES.

If you are operating an FD1 FlexDraper[®] Header, from the DRAPER GRAIN HEADER STYLE menu (C), select FLEX 2000 SERIES.

| 0.0 mph | | Header Setup |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| U.U mpn | Maximum Working Height | The second se |
| P | 52 | |
| | Header type | C T |
| | Draper/Varifeed | V |
| | Cutting Type | |
| ■ 🛣 🗠 (B) | Platform | V |
| 副がの作用 | Header Width | |
| | 40.0 ft | |
| | Target Work Width | |
| 11 400 | 40.0 f | |
| C | Width adjust step | C |
| Ŷ | ▼ 2.5 ft | |
| Back Hydraul | Drive Head 1 Head 2 Feeder | Thresh |
| I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I | Drive Head 1 Head 2 Feeder | Thresh |

Figure 7.37: Case IH Combine Display

| 0.0 mph | M | Header Setup 2 |
|------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| U.U mpn | HHC Tilt Sensitivity | |
| (P) | 70 | |
| | HHC Ht Sens | |
| | 147 | |
| any 1 | Header Pressure Float | |
| ■ * <i>△</i> (B) | Not Installed | V |
| 司家会作用 | Header Lateral Tilt | and the second |
| | Installed | |
| | | |
| | Draper Grain Header Style | |
| (C)- | Rigid 2000 Series | |
| Back Hydraul | Drive Head 1 Head 2 | |

Figure 7.38: Case IH Combine Display

- 7. Locate the HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set as follows:
 - If using a two-sensor system: Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
 - If using a single-sensor system: Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

- 8. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.
- 9. From the REEL DRIVE TYPE menu (A), select
 - 4 if you are using a standard 19-tooth drive sprocket
 - 5 if you are using an optional high-torque 14-tooth drive sprocket
 - 6 if you are using an optional high-torque 10-tooth drive sprocket

10. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu (A), select YES.

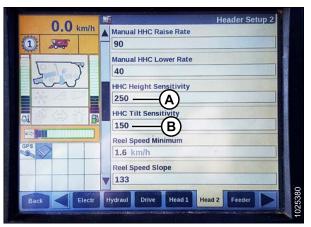


Figure 7.39: Case IH Combine Display

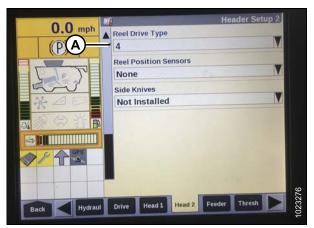


Figure 7.40: Case IH Combine Display



Figure 7.41: Case IH Combine Display

- 11. Locate AUTOTILT field (A).
 - If using a two-sensor system: Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
 - If using a single-sensor system: Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.

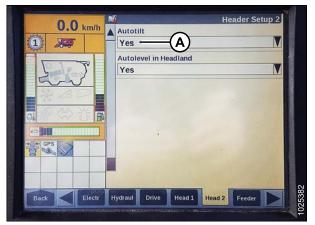


Figure 7.42: Case IH Combine Display

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab (Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. Refer to the header operator's manual for instructions on setting float.

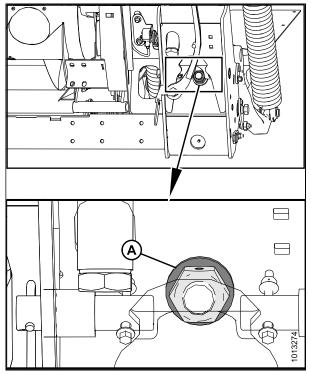


Figure 7.43: Float Lock

- 3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on float indicator is on 0.
- 4. Ensure header float is unlocked.

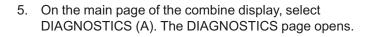


Figure 7.44: Float Indicator Box

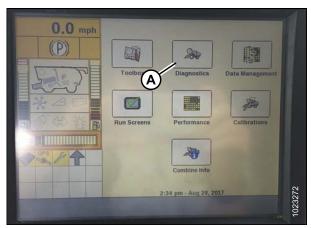


Figure 7.45: Case IH Combine Display

| 0 | .0 mph | Group Header B | Settings |
|------|---------|----------------------|---|
| | T | Parameter | V |
| | ~ | Module | SPN |
| | 〉近日 | Schematic IO Name | Value / Status |
| | GPS | Pin Assignment | 2 |
| | | Electrical Component | Contraction of the second s |
| Back | Version | CAN Fault Set | tings Res GPS COL |

Figure 7.46: Case IH Combine Display

- 6. Select SETTINGS (A). The SETTINGS page opens.
- 7. From the GROUP menu, select HEADER (B).

8. From the PARAMETER menu, select LEFT HEIGHT/ TILT SENSOR (A).

9. The SETTINGS page updates to display the voltage in

view the full range of voltage readings.

10. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high

Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.

the VALUE/STATUS field (A). Lower the feeder house

fully, and then raise it 305 mm (12 in.) off the ground to

limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is

insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to Adjusting

| 0.0 mph | 18 | Settings | |
|---------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------|
| U.U mpn | Group | | |
| (P) | Header | M | |
| | Parameter | 0 | |
| I LAST | Left Height/Tilt Ser | nsor (A) | |
| *40 | Module UCM | SPN 57 | |
| a 家会茶 B | Schematic IO Name AN59 | Value / Status 4.30 ∨ | |
| | Pin Assignment 3B-12 | | |
| | Electrical Component | | 120 |
| Back Version | CAN Fault Setti | ngs Res GPS | 1023270 |

Figure 7.47: Case IH Combine Display

ttinas 0.0 mph Group (P) V Header Parameter V Left Height/Tilt Sensor Module SPN UCM 57 Value / Status Schematic IO Name 4.30 V Α **AN59** Pin Assignment 3B-12 **Electrical Component** Version CAN Fault Settings Res

Figure 7.48: Case IH Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with center-link set to D. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in header operator's manual for instructions.

NOTE:

This procedure applies to combines with a software version below 28.00. For instructions on calibrating the AHHC for combines with software version 28.00 or above, refer to *Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software), page 191.*

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to D.
- 2. Ensure all header and float module electrical and hydraulic connections are made.
- 3. Start the combine engine, but do **NOT** engage separator or feeder house.

- 4. Locate HEADER CONTROL switch (A) on the right console, and set to HT (this is AHHC mode).
- 5. Hold the DOWN button for 10 seconds, or until the combine feeder house has been lowered all the way down (the feeder house will stop moving).
- 6. Push the RAISE button and hold it until the feeder house travels all the way up. It will stop 61 cm (2 ft.) above ground for 5 seconds, then it will resume lift. This is an indication that calibration is successful.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

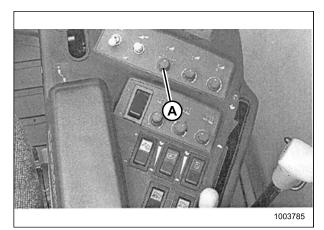


Figure 7.49: Right Console

Setting Preset Cutting Height (Case 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140)

To set preset cutting height, follow these steps:

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 152 mm (6 in.) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. Refer to Step *4, page 159*. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

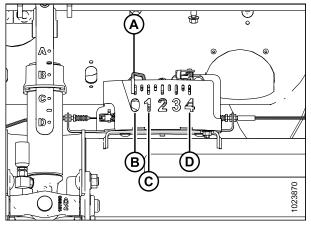


Figure 7.50: Float Indicator Box

- 1. Engage separator and header.
- 2. Manually raise or lower header to desired cutting height.
- 3. Press 1 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.

When setting presets, always set header position before setting reel position. If header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not be saved.

- 4. Manually raise or lower reel to desired position.
- 5. Press 1 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.
- 6. Manually raise or lower header to a second desired cutting height.
- 7. Press 2 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.
- 8. Manually raise or lower reel to desired position.
- 9. Press 2 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.



Figure 7.51: Case Combine Console



Figure 7.52: Case Combine Console



Figure 7.53: Case Combine Display – Run 1 Page

Up and down arrows should now appear in the MANUAL HEIGHT box (A) on the RUN 1 page on the combine display. This indicates that the auto header height control (AHHC) is functioning.

10. To enable the presets, activate AHHC button (A) to place the header on the ground. To enable the first present, tap the button once. To enable the second preset, tap the button twice.

To lift the header to maximum working height, hold the SHIFT button on the back of the control handle while tapping AHHC button (A).

11. The maximum working height can be adjusted on the HEADER SETUP page on the combine display. Enter the desired height in the MAXIMUM WORKING HEIGHT field (A).

12. If you need to change the position of one of the presets, you can fine-tune this setting with button (A) on the combine console.



Figure 7.54: Case Combine Control Handle



Figure 7.55: Case Combine Display – Header Setup Page



Figure 7.56: Case Combine Console

7.1.5 Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230 and 7240/8240/9240 Combines

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Case 8010)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

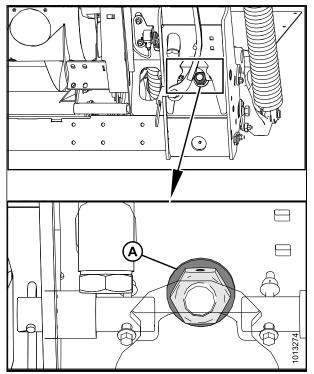


Figure 7.57: Float Lock

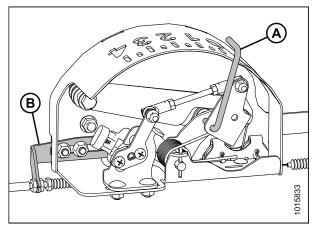


Figure 7.58: Float Indicator Box

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on float indicator is on 0.

- 4. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 5. Select DIAG (A) on the Universal display MAIN screen. The DIAG screen displays.

6. Select SUB SYSTEM (A). The SUB SYSTEM screen displays.

7. Select HDR HEIGHT/TILT (A). The SENSOR screen displays.

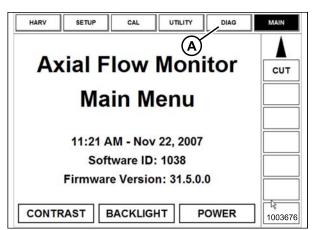


Figure 7.59: Case 8010 Combine Display

| DIAG | HISTORY | STATUS | CARD | | MAIN |
|-----------|---------|--------|------|-----------------|---------|
| Sub Syste | | | | | 1 |
| | VC | DLTAG | E | | |
| Sensor | RHN | KEY | SW | RHM SPN# 703 | CUT |
| | (A) | | | | |
| | \cup | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | 1003677 |

Figure 7.60: Case 8010 Combine Display

| ESC | | ENTER |
|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| AFS | HDR HEIGHT/TILT | SIEVE |
| BRAKES | HEADER THRESHING | |
| | | |
| ENGINE | LIGHTS | TRANSMISSION |
| FEEDER | OPERATOR CONTROL | UNLOADING |
| GRAIN HANDLING | RESIDUE VOLTAGE | |
| GROUND DRIVE | RHM LAMP | 1003678 |

Figure 7.61: Case 8010 Combine Display

8. Select LEFT SEN (A). The exact voltage is displayed. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

| ESC | | ENTER |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| ACCUMULATOR VLV | LIFT PRESS SEN | RT CENTER SEN |
| ADJ DEC SW | LOWER SW SET HEIGHT # | |
| ADJ INC SW | LOWER VLV | SET HEIGHT #2 SW |
| FEEDER POS SEN | A RAISE SW | TILT ANGLE SEN |
| HHC RESUME SW | RAISE VLV | TILT CCW SW |
| LEFT SEN | RAISELOW ISENSE | |
| LFT CENTER SEN | RIGHT SEN | TILT CW SW |

Figure 7.62: Case 8010 Combine Display

HDR HEIGHT/TILT LEFT SEN VOLTAGE 0.0 V 0.0 V 0.0 V 0.0 CCM1 SPN#20

Figure 7.63: Case 8010 Combine Display

Setting Header Controls (Case 8010)

The following procedure applies to Case 8010 combines without a shift button on the control handle.

The REEL FORE-AFT switches (A) also control header fore-aft tilt if header is equipped with the fore-aft tilt option. The switches can be configured to allow the Operator to swap between reel fore-aft and header fore-aft tilt.

To set the header controls, follow these steps:

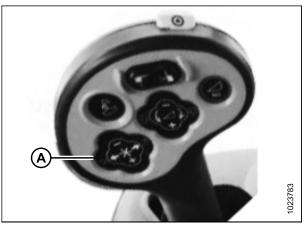


Figure 7.64: Case Combine Controls

9. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high

Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.

limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting*

 To swap between reel fore-aft controls and header foreaft tilt controls, go to the LAYOUT tab, select FORE/ AFT CONTROL (A) from the legend, and place it on one of the operator-configurable screens (HARV1, HARV2, HARV3) or ADJUST under the RUN menu.

NOTE:

H F/A (B) is displayed on the status bar on the right of the screen when HEADER is selected with the FORE/ AFT CONTROL.

2. If HEADER is selected with the FORE/AFT CONTROL, press the reel aft button on the control handle to tilt the header rearward, or press the reel fore button on the control handle to tilt the header forward.

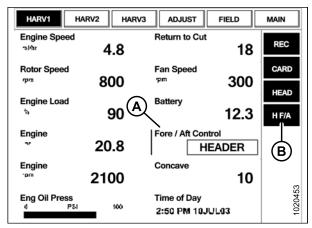


Figure 7.65: Case Combine Display

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

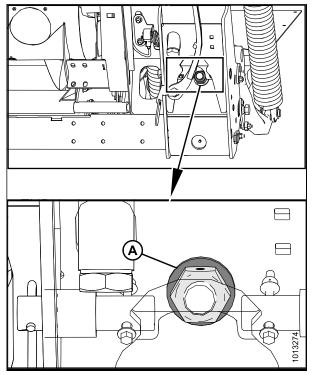


Figure 7.66: Float Lock

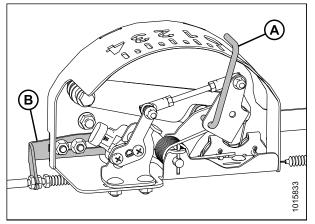


Figure 7.67: Float Indicator Box

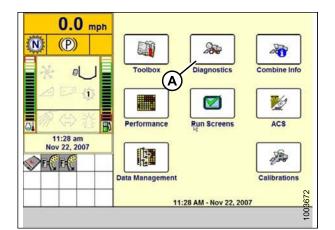
3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on float indicator is on 0.

- 4. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 5. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the MAIN page. The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.
- 6. Select SETTINGS. The SETTINGS page opens.

7. Select the GROUP arrow (A). The GROUP dialog box opens.

8. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A). The PARAMETER page opens.







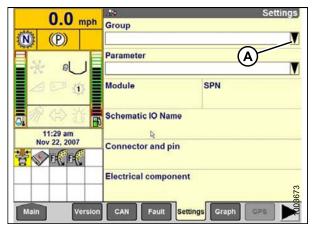


Figure 7.69: Case IH Combine Display

| 0.0 mph | | Setting |
|--------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| (N) (P) | Group | × |
| | AFS | Header |
| | Brakes | Header HeightTilt |
| A P 练 例 份 注 | Cleaning | Hydraulic |
| _ ≫ ⇔ 法, | Engine | Lights |
| 11:30 am Nov 22, 2007 | Feeder | Operator Control |
| E C F | Grain Handling | RHM lamp |
| | Ground Drive | Residue |

Figure 7.70: Case IH Combine Display

- 9. Select LEFT HEADER HEIGHT SEN (A), and then select the GRAPH button (B). The exact voltage is displayed at top of page. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.
- 10. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.*

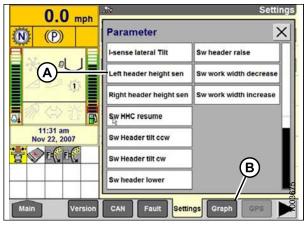


Figure 7.71: Case IH Combine Display

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case IH 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

This procedure applies to combines with a software version below 28.00. For instructions on calibrating the AHHC for combines with software version 28.00 or above, refer to *Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software), page 191.*

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Ensure all header and float module electrical and hydraulic connections are made.

3. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the MAIN page.

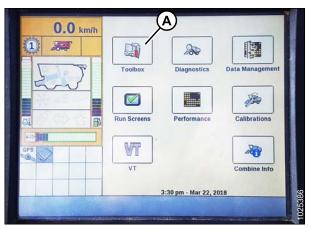


Figure 7.72: Case IH Combine Display

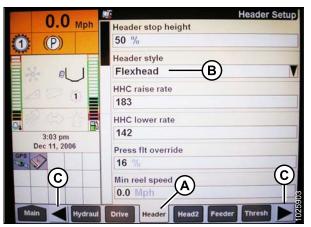


Figure 7.73: Case IH Combine Display

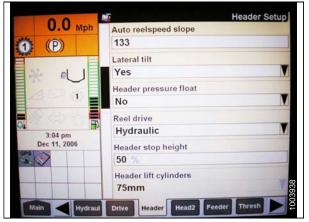


Figure 7.74: Case IH Combine Display

4. Select HEADER tab (A).

NOTE:

To locate the HEADER tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (C).

Set HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT to NO if equipped,

and ensure REEL DRIVE is HYDRAULIC.

5. Set appropriate HEADER STYLE (B).

6. Set AUTO REEL SPEED SLOPE.

7.

8. Install REEL FORE-BACK (if applicable).

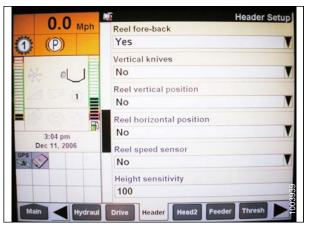


Figure 7.75: Case IH Combine Display

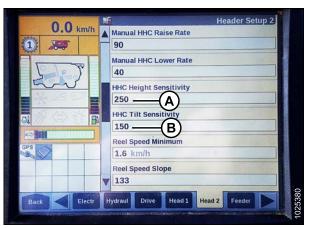


Figure 7.76: Case IH Combine Display

| 0.0 | Header Setup |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 0.0 Mph | Tilt sensitivity |
| () (P) | 100 |
| | Reel speed offset |
| | -0.1 Mph |
| aph | Ground height sensor stuck detection |
| | Off |
| | Foreaft control |
| 3:04 pm | Yes |
| Dec 11, 2006 | Ride control |
| | Off |
| | Hdr foreaft tilt |
| | Yes |
| Main 🚽 Hydraul | Drive Header Head2 Feeder Thresh |

Figure 7.77: Case IH Combine Display

- 9. Locate the HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set as follows:
 - If using a two-sensor system: Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
 - If using a single-sensor system: Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.

NOTE:

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

- 10. Set the HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.
- 11. Install FORE/AFT CONTROL and HDR FORE/AFT TILT (if applicable).

- 12. Press HEAD2 at bottom of page.
- 13. Ensure HEADER TYPE is DRAPER.

If recognition resistor is plugged in to header harness, you will not be able to change this.

- 14. Set cutting type to PLATFORM.
- 15. Set appropriate HEADER WIDTH and HEADER USAGE.
- 16. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES (A).



- If using a two-sensor system: Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- If using a single-sensor system: Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

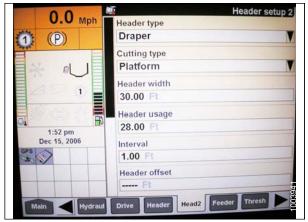


Figure 7.78: Case IH Combine Display

| | Header Setup 2 |
|----------------------|----------------|
| Reel Fore-Aft | |
| Yes | |
| Reel height sensor | |
| Yes | |
| Reel distance sensor | |
| No | V |
| Vertical knives | |
| No | |
| Header Lateral Tilt | |
| Yes | V |
| Autotilt | |
| No | V |

Figure 7.79: Case IH Combine Display

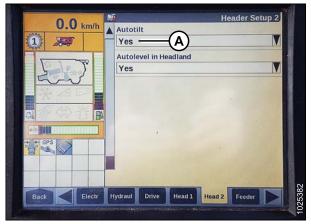


Figure 7.80: Case IH Combine Display

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Case Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure header center-link is set to D.
- 2. Raise header on down stops and unlock float.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.
- 4. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the MAIN page.

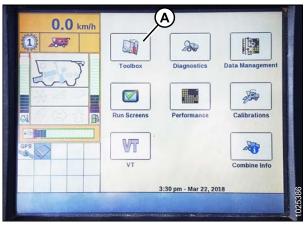


Figure 7.81: Case IH Combine Display

5. Select the HEAD 1 tab (A).

NOTE:

To locate the HEAD 1 tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (B).

| 0.0 | Header Setup 1 | |
|-------------|------------------------------------|--------|
| 0.0 km/h | Maximum Work Height | |
| | 40 % | |
| | Header Type | |
| S S | Draper/Varifeed | |
| 5-13 | Header Sub Type | |
| * 20 | 2000 | |
| | Cutting Type | |
| | Platform | |
| GPS S | Frame Type | |
| | Rigid | |
| (B) | Header Width (B) | |
| Y | ▼ 12.00 m | |
| Back Electr | Hydraul Drive Head 1 Head 2 Feeder | 100E00 |
| Back Electr | Internet a freeder Feeder | S |

Figure 7.82: Case IH Combine Display

- 6. Locate the HEADER SUB TYPE field.
- 7. Select 2000 (A).

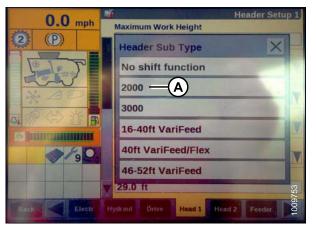


Figure 7.83: Case IH Combine Display

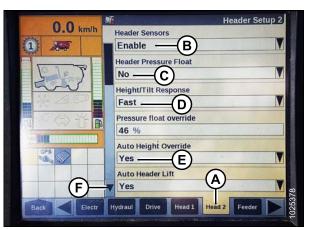


Figure 7.84: Case IH Combine Display

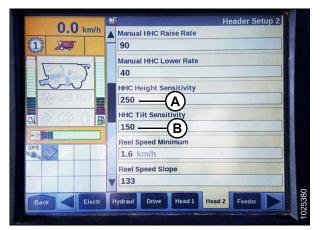


Figure 7.85: Case IH Combine Display

- 8. Select the HEAD 2 tab (A).
- 9. In the HEADER SENSORS field (B), select ENABLE.
- 10. In the HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT field (C), select NO.
- 11. In the HEIGHT/TILT RESPONSE field (D), select FAST.
- 12. In the AUTO HEIGHT OVERRIDE field (E), select YES.
- 13. Press the down arrow (F) to go to the next page.
- 14. Locate the HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set as follows:
 - If using a single-sensor system, set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.
 - If using a two-sensor system, set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

15. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.

16. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES (A).

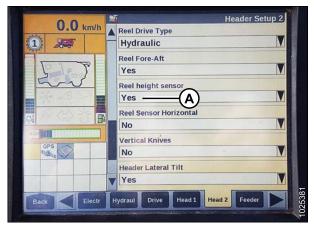


Figure 7.86: Case IH Combine Display

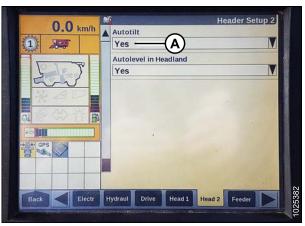


Figure 7.87: Case IH Combine Display



Figure 7.88: Case IH Combine Display

- 17. Locate AUTOTILT field (A).
 - If using a two-sensor system: Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
 - If using a single-sensor system: Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.

NOTE:

Icons (A) and (B) appear on the monitor only after engaging the separator and header, and then pressing HEADER RESUME button on the control panel.

18. Ensure AUTO HEIGHT icon (A) appears on the monitor and is displayed as shown at location (B). When the header is set for cutting on the ground, this verifies that the combine is correctly using the potentiometer on the header to sense ground pressure.

NOTE:

AUTO HEIGHT field (B) may appear on any of the RUN tabs and not necessarily on the RUN 1 tab.

- 19. Select CALIBRATION on the combine display, and press the right arrow navigation key to enter the information box.
- 20. Select HEADER (A), and press ENTER. The CALIBRATION dialog box opens.

You can use the up and down navigation keys to move between options.

21. Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear in the dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.

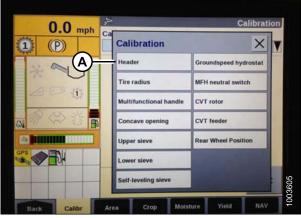


Figure 7.89: Case IH Combine Display

| 0.0 mph | Calibration |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 2 P 8:33 am Jun 20, 2012 | H Park combine with engine running and header level to ground. CAUTION Header will move autom stand clear Press OK to continue and then Header Down button. Ok ESC |
| Back Calibr | Area NAV Crop Molsture Yield |

Figure 7.90: Case IH Combine Display

22. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION SUCCESSFUL message is displayed on the page. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER or ESC key.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (Case IH)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. On the main page of the combine display, select DIAGNOSTICS (A). The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.

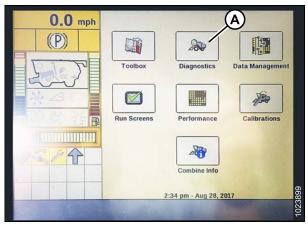


Figure 7.91: Case IH Combine Display

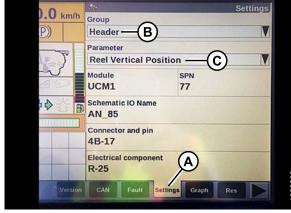


Figure 7.92: Case IH Combine Display

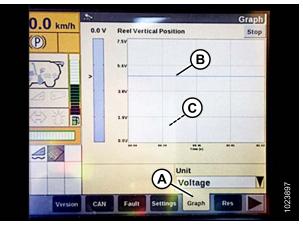


Figure 7.93: Case IH Combine Display

- 2. Select SETTINGS tab (A). The SETTINGS page opens.
- 3. From the GROUP menu, select HEADER (B).
- 4. From the PARAMETER menu, select REEL VERTICAL POSITION (C).

- 5. Select GRAPH tab (A). The REEL VERTICAL POSITION graph displays.
- 6. Lower the reel to view the high voltage (B). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
- 7. Raise the reel to view the low voltage (C). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.
- 8. If either voltage is out of range, refer to 8.1 Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor, page 315.

Setting Preset Cutting Height (Case 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, 7240/8240/9240)

To set the preset cutting height, follow these steps:

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 152 mm (6 in.) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. Refer to Step *4, page 159*. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.



- 2. Manually raise or lower header to a desired cutting height.
- 3. Press SET #1 switch (A). The light (C) beside switch (A) will illuminate.

NOTE:

Use switch (E) for fine adjustments.

NOTE:

When setting presets, always set header position before setting reel position. If header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not save.

- 4. Manually raise or lower reel to desired position.
- 5. Press SET #1 switch (A). The light (C) beside switch (A) will illuminate.
- 6. Manually raise or lower header to a second desired cutting height.
- 7. Press SET #2 switch (B). The light (D) beside switch (B) will illuminate.
- 8. Manually raise or lower reel to a second desired position.
- 9. Press SET #2 switch (B). The light (D) beside switch (B) will illuminate.

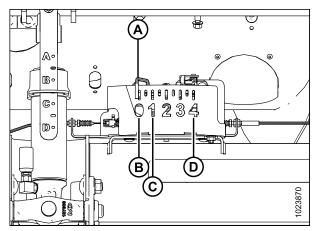


Figure 7.94: Float Indicator Box

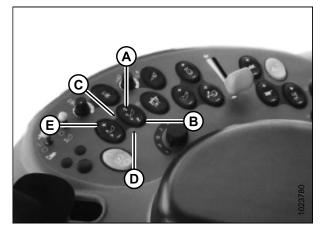


Figure 7.95: Case Combine Controls

- 10. To swap between set points, press HEADER RESUME (A).
- 11. To raise header at headlands, press and hold SHIFT button (B) at the back of the control handle and press HEADER RESUME switch (C). To lower header, press HEADER RESUME switch (C) once to return to header preset height.

Pressing HEADER RAISE/LOWER switches (C) and (D) disengages AUTO HEIGHT mode. Press HEADER RESUME (A) to reengage.



Figure 7.96: Case Combine Controls

7.1.6 Challenger and Massey Ferguson 6 and 7 Series Combines

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Challenger and Massey Ferguson)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation, causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

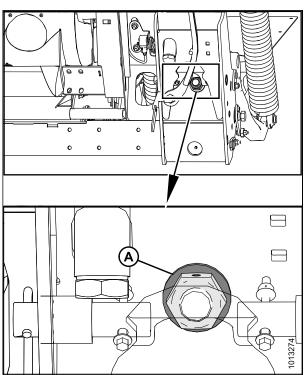


Figure 7.97: Float Lock

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on the float indicator is on **0**.

- 4. Go to the FIELD page on the combine monitor, and then press the diagnostics icon. The MISCELLANEOUS page displays.
- 5. Press the VMM DIAGNOSTIC button (A). The VMM DIAGNOSTIC page displays.

 Go to the ANALOG IN tab (A), and then select VMM MODULE 3 by pressing the text box below the four tabs. The voltage from the AHHC sensor is now displayed on page as HEADER HEIGHT RIGHT POT and HEADER HEIGHT LEFT POT. The readings may be slightly different.

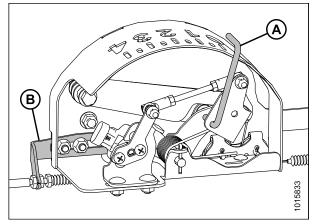


Figure 7.98: Float Indicator Box

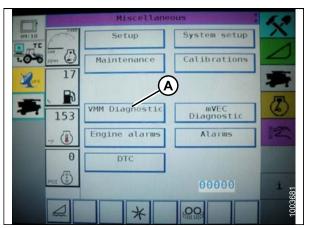


Figure 7.99: Challenger Combine Display

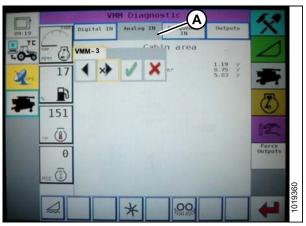


Figure 7.100: Challenger Combine Display

7. Fully lower the combine feeder house (float module should be fully separated from the header).

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

- 8. Read voltage.
- 9. Raise header so cutterbar is 150 mm (6 in.) off the ground.
- 10. Read voltage.

| | VMM Diagnostic | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------------|--|-----------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| 09:19 | Digital IN | Analog IN | Frequency IN | Outputs | X |
| LOO MAN | 3 VMM-4 | Under | cab floo | r | 1 |
| 1 | 7 I-02 Header I-03 Grain | height left height right tank auger po tank rear po | t pot | 1.94 V 1.94 V 0.00 V 0.00 V | - |
| | 1-07 Grain I-10 Header | tank front po height rel. moisture sen | pos lor | 0.00 V 1.61 V 7.00 V 7.00 V | 凤 |
| 151 | I-13 Header I-14 Grain | tilt rel. po temp. sensor | 55 | 0.01 V 1.97 V 5.03 V | C |
| · 🚺 | | | | | 12 |
| (| Ð | | | | Force Outputs |
| PER C | | | | | |
| | | | | | 4 |
| | | * | 000 | | 4 |

Figure 7.101: Challenger Combine Display

11. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162* or *Adjusting Voltage Limits: Two-Sensor System, page 163*.

Engaging the Auto Header Height Control (Challenger and Massey Ferguson)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The following system components are required in order for the auto header height control (AHHC) to work:

- Main module (PCB board) and header driver module (PCB board) mounted in card box in fuse panel module (FP)
- Multi-function control handle operator inputs
- Operator inputs mounted in the control console module (CC) panel

NOTE:

In addition to the above components, the electrohydraulic header lift control valve is an integral part of the system.

Engage the AHHC as follows:

 Scroll through the header control options on the combine display using the header control switch until the AHHC icon (A) is displayed in the first message box. The AHHC will adjust the header height in relation to the ground according to the height setting and sensitivity setting.

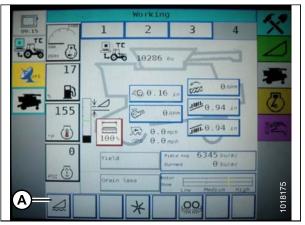


Figure 7.102: Challenger Combine Display

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Challenger and Massey Ferguson)

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. On the FIELD screen, press the DIAGNOSTICS icon (A). The MISCELLANEOUS screen appears.

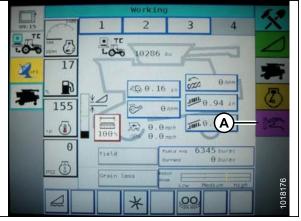


Figure 7.103: Challenger Combine Display

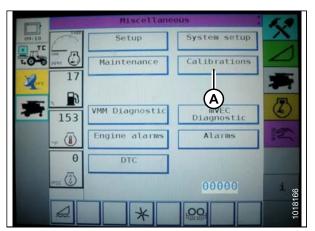


Figure 7.104: Challenger Combine Display

3. Press the CALIBRATIONS button (A). The CALIBRATIONS screen appears.

4. Press HEADER button (A). The HEADER CALIBRATION screen displays a warning.

5. Read the warning message, and then press the green check mark button.

6. Follow the on-screen prompts to complete calibration.

NOTE:

The calibration procedure can be canceled at any time by pressing the cancel button in the bottom right corner of the screen. While the header calibration is running, the calibration can also be canceled by using the UP, DOWN, TILT RIGHT, or TILT LEFT buttons on the control handle.

NOTE:

If the combine does not have HEADER TILT installed or if it is inoperable, you may receive warnings during calibration. Press the green check mark if these warnings appear. This will not affect the AHHC calibration.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

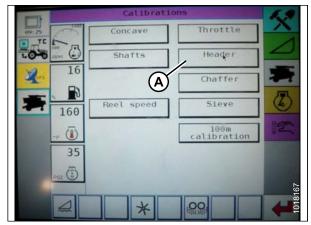


Figure 7.105: Challenger Combine Display

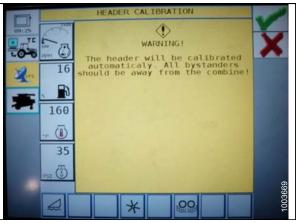


Figure 7.106: Challenger Combine Display



Figure 7.107: Challenger Combine Display

Adjusting the Header Height (Challenger and Massey Ferguson)

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) is activated, press and release the HEADER LOWER button on the control handle. The AHHC will automatically lower the header to the selected height setting.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

You can adjust the selected AHHC height using the HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT knob (A) on the control console. Turning the knob clockwise increases the selected height, and turning the knob counterclockwise decreases the selected height.



Figure 7.108: Height Adjustment Knob on the Combine Control Console

Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate (Challenger and Massey Ferguson)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press Header icon (A) on the FIELD screen. The HEADER screen displays.

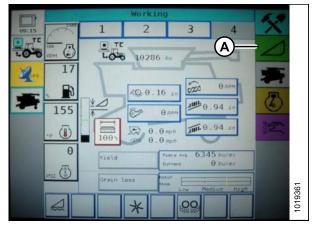


Figure 7.109: Challenger Combine Display

2. Press HEADER CONTROL (A). The HEADER CONTROL screen displays.

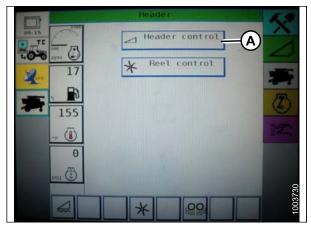


Figure 7.110: Challenger Combine Display

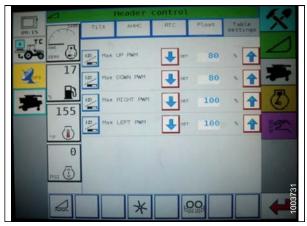


Figure 7.111: Challenger Combine Display

- 3. Go to the TABLE SETTINGS tab.
- 4. Press up arrow on MAX UP PWM to increase percentage number and increase raise speed. Press down arrow on MAX UP PWM to decrease percentage number and decrease raise speed.
- 5. Press up arrow on MAX DOWN PWM to increase percentage number and increase lower speed. Press down arrow on MAX DOWN PWM to decrease percentage number and decrease lower speed.

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (Challenger and Massey Ferguson)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Press the HEADER icon on the FIELD screen. The HEADER screen appears.
- 2. Press the HEADER CONTROL button (A). The HEADER CONTROL screen appears. You can adjust sensitivity on this screen using the up and down arrows.



Figure 7.112: Challenger Combine Display



Figure 7.113: Challenger Combine Display

- 3. Adjust the sensitivity to the maximum setting.
- 4. Activate the AHHC, and press the HEADER LOWER button on the control handle.
- 5. Decrease the sensitivity until the feeder house remains steady and does not bounce up and down.

NOTE:

This is the maximum sensitivity and is only an initial setting. The final setting must be made in the field, as the system reaction will vary with changing surfaces and operating conditions.

NOTE:

If maximum sensitivity is not needed, a less sensitive setting will reduce the frequency of header height corrections and component wear. Partially opening the accumulator valve will cushion the action of the header lift cylinders and reduce header hunting.

7.1.7 CLAAS 500 Series Combines

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 500 Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual for instructions.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- Use the < key (A) or > key (B) to select AUTO HEADER, and press the OK key (C). The E5 screen displays whether the automatic header height is on or off.

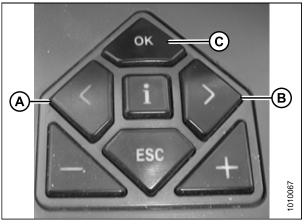


Figure 7.114: CLAAS Combine Controls

- Use the key (A) or the + key (B) to turn the AHHC on, and press the OK key (C).
- 4. Engage the threshing mechanism and the header.

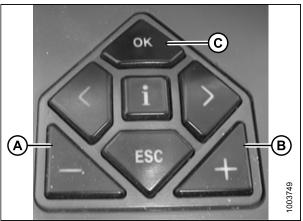


Figure 7.115: CLAAS Combine Controls

- 5. Use the < or > key to select CUTT. HEIGHT LIMITS, and press the combine controls OK key.
- 6. Follow the procedure displayed on the screen to program the upper and lower limits of the header into the CEBIS.

 Use the < or > key to select SENSITIVITY CAC, and press the combine controls OK key.

NOTE:

Setting the sensitivity of the AHHC system affects the reaction speed of the AHHC on the header.

8. Use the – key or the + key to change the setting of the reaction speed, and press the combine controls OK key.

9. Use line (A) or value (B) to determine the sensitivity setting.

NOTE:

The setting can be adjusted from 0–100%. When sensitivity is adjusted to 0%, the signals from the sensing bands have no effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. When sensitivity is adjusted to 100%, the signals from the sensing bands have maximum effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. The recommended starting point is 50%.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

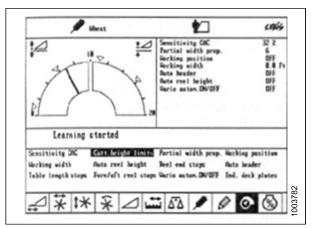


Figure 7.116: CLAAS Combine Display

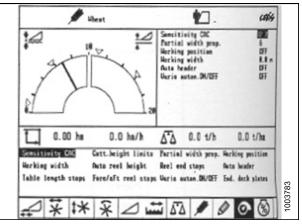


Figure 7.117: CLAAS Combine Display

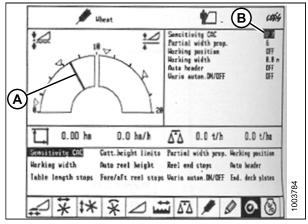


Figure 7.118: CLAAS Combine Display

Setting Cutting Height (CLAAS 500 Series)

Cutting heights can be programmed into the preset cutting height and auto contour systems. Use the preset cutting height system for cutting heights above 150 mm (6 in.), and use the auto contour system for cutting heights below 150 mm (6 in.).

Setting Preset Cutting Height (CLAAS 500 Series)

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Start the engine.
- 2. Activate the machine enable switch.
- 3. Engage the threshing mechanism.
- 4. Engage the header.
- 5. Briefly press button (A) in order to activate the auto contour system, or briefly press button (B) in order to activate the preset cutting height system.

NOTE:

Button (A) is used only with auto header height control (AHHC) function. Button (B) is used only with the return to cut function.

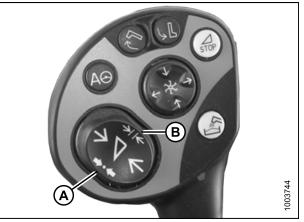


Figure 7.119: Control handle Buttons

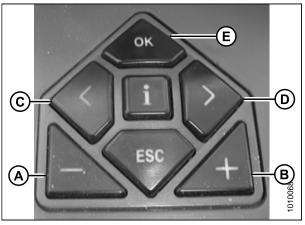


Figure 7.120: CLAAS Combine Controls

- 6. Use the < key (C) or > key (D) to select the CUTTING HEIGHT screen, and press the OK key (E).
- Use the key (A) or the + key (B) to set the desired cutting height. An arrow indicates the selected cutting height on the scale.

- 8. Briefly press button (A) or button (B) in order to select the set point.
- 9. Repeat Step 7, page 207 for the set point.

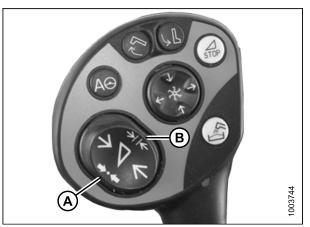


Figure 7.121: Control Handle Buttons

Setting Cutting Height Manually (CLAAS 500 Series)

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Use button (A) to raise the header or button (B) to lower the header to the desired cutting height.
- 2. Press and hold button (C) for 3 seconds to store the cutting height into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).
- Program a second set point, if desired, by using button (A) to raise the header or button (B) to lower the header to the desired cutting height, and briefly press button (C) to store the second set point into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

NOTE:

For above the ground cutting, repeat Step *1, page 208*, and use button (D) instead of button (C) while repeating Step *2, page 208*.

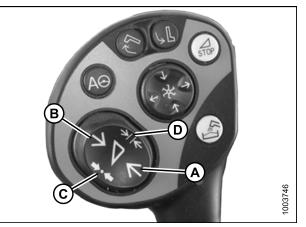


Figure 7.122: Control Handle Buttons

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 500 Series)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

The upper and lower limits of the header must be programmed into the CEBIS before adjusting the sensitivity of the AHHC system. The setting can be adjusted from 0–100%. When sensitivity is adjusted to 0%, the signals from the sensing bands have no effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. When sensitivity is adjusted to 100%, the signals from the sensing bands have maximum effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. The recommended starting point is 50%.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Use the < key (C) or the > key (D) to select SENSITIVITY CAC, and press the OK key (E).
- 2. Use the key (A) or the + (B) key to change the reaction speed setting, and press the OK key (E).

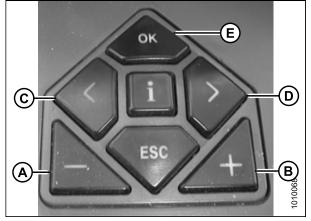


Figure 7.123: CLAAS Combine Controls

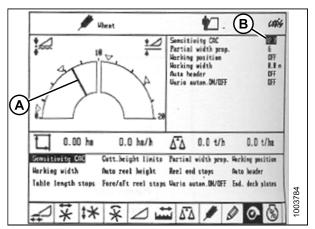


Figure 7.124: CLAAS Combine Display

3. Use line (A) or value (B) to determine the sensitivity setting.

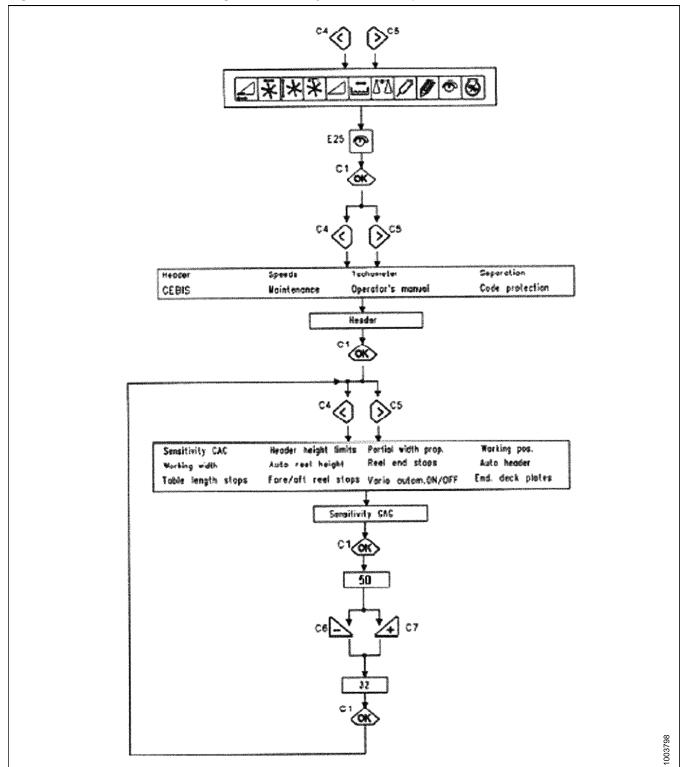


Figure 7.125: Flow Chart for Setting the Sensitivity of the Float Optimizer

Adjusting Auto Reel Speed (CLAAS 500 Series)

The preset reel speed can be set when the automatic header functions are activated.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

 Use the < or > key to select REEL WINDOW. Window E15 will display the current advance or retard speed of the reel in relation to the ground speed.

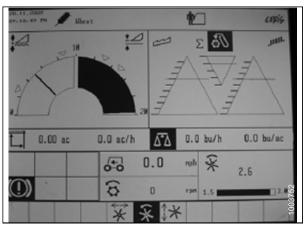


Figure 7.126: CLAAS Combine Display

- 2. Press the OK key (C) to open the REEL SPEED window.
- Use the key (A) or the + key (B) to set the reel speed in relation to the current ground speed. Window E15 will display the selected reel speed.

 Manually adjust the reel speed by rotating the rotary switch to the reel position (A), and then use the – or + key to set the reel speed.

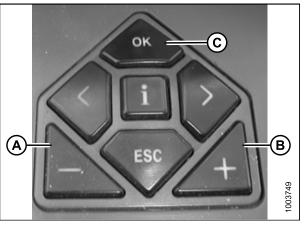


Figure 7.127: CLAAS Combine Controls



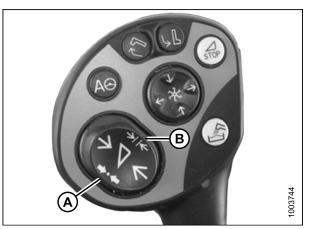
Figure 7.128: CLAAS Combine Rotary Switch

5. Press and hold button (A) or button (B) for 3 seconds to store the setting into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

NOTE:

Whenever button (A) or button (B) is pressed for 3 seconds, the current positions for reel speed and cutting height are stored.

 Use the < or > key to select the REEL WINDOW. Window E15 will display the current advance or retard speed of the reel in relation to the ground speed.





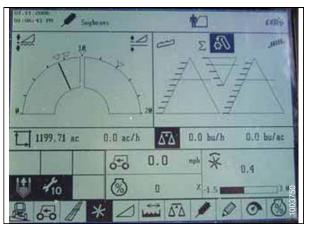


Figure 7.130: CLAAS Combine Display

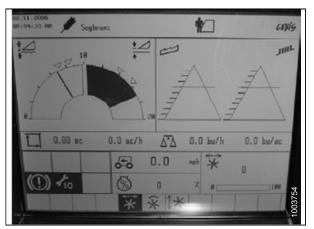


Figure 7.131: CLAAS Combine Display

- Press the OK key (E), and use the < key (C) or the > key (D) to select the REEL FORE AND AFT window.
- 8. Use the key (A) or the + key (B) to set the reel fore-aft position.

NOTE:

Control handle button (A) or button (B) also can be used to set the reel fore-aft position.

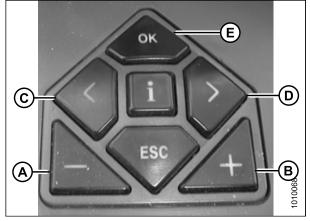


Figure 7.132: CLAAS Combine Controls

9. Press and hold button (A) or button (B) for 3 seconds to store the setting into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

NOTE:

Whenever button (A) or button (B) is pressed for 3 seconds, the current positions for reel speed and cutting height are stored.

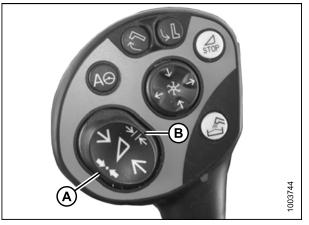


Figure 7.133: CLAAS Control Handle Buttons

7.1.8 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual for instructions.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Ensure that the header float is unlocked.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.

4. Use control knob (A) to highlight the AUTO CONTOUR icon (B) and press control knob (A) to select it.

 Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that resembles a header with up and down arrows (not shown), and press control knob (A) to select it. The highlighted header icon (B) will be displayed on the screen.

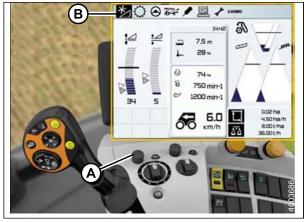


Figure 7.134: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle



Figure 7.135: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

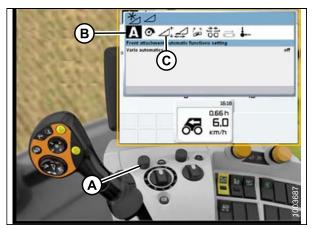


Figure 7.136: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

resembles a header with up and down arrows (C), and press control knob (A) to select it.

6. Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that

- 7. Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that resembles a screwdriver (B).
- 8. Engage the combine separator and feeder house.
- 9. Press control knob (A) and a progress bar chart will appear.

- 10. Fully raise the feeder house. The progress bar chart will advance to 25% (A).
- 11. Fully lower the feeder house. The progress bar chart will advance to 50%.
- 12. Fully raise the feeder house. The progress bar chart will advance to 75%.
- 13. Fully lower the feeder house. The progress bar chart will advance to 100%.

Earl learning procedure with 'Oft'

Figure 7.137: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle



Figure 7.138: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Learning front attachment height Learning procedure successfully consided 100% Abort with Tise' 1200 min-1 120

Figure 7.139: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

14. Ensure the progress bar chart displays 100% (A). The calibration procedure is now complete.

NOTE:

If the voltage is not within the range of 0.5–4.5 V at any time throughout the calibration process, the monitor will indicate learning procedure not concluded.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete ground calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete. Setting Cutting Height (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series)



Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Lower the header to desired cutting height or ground pressure setting. The float indicator box should be set to 1.5.
- 2. Hold the left side of the header raise and lower switch (A) until you hear a ping.

NOTE:

You can set two different cutting heights.



Figure 7.140: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Use control knob (A) to highlight the HEADER/REEL icon (B), and press control knob (A) to select it. The HEADER/REEL dialog box opens.
- 2. Select HEADER icon.

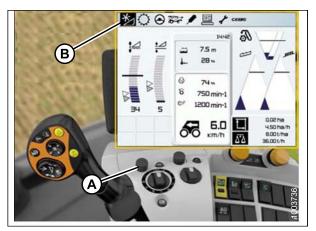


Figure 7.141: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

- 3. Select the FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETER SETTINGS icon (A). A list of settings appears.
- 4. Select SENSITIVITY CAC (B) from the list.

5. Select the SENSITIVITY CAC icon (A).

NOTE:

To set the sensitivity, you will have to change the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT (B) from the 0 default. The settings from 1–50 provide a faster response, whereas the settings from -1 to -50 provide a slower response. For best results, make adjustments in increments of five.

- 6. Increase the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT setting if the reaction time between the header and the float module is too slow while cutting on the ground, and decrease the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT setting if the reaction time between the header and the float module is too fast.
- 7. Increase the sensitivity if the header is lowered too slowly, and decrease the sensitivity if the header hits the ground too hard or is lowered too quickly.



Figure 7.142: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

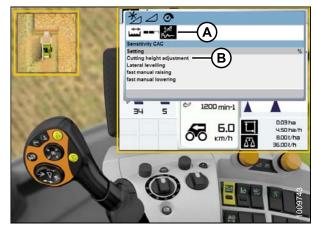


Figure 7.143: CLAAS Combine Display

Adjusting Auto Reel Speed (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Use control knob (A) to highlight the HEADER/REEL icon (B), and press control knob (A) to select it. The HEADER/REEL dialog box opens.

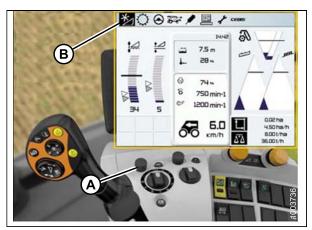


Figure 7.144: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

B Rest sustain functions susting Rest system Rest Syst

Figure 7.145: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle



Figure 7.146: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

2. Use control knob (A) to select REEL SPEED (B), and adjust the reel speed (if you are NOT using Auto Reel Speed). A graph displays in the dialog box.

 Select ACTUAL VALUE (A) from the AUTO REEL SPEED dialog box (if you are using Auto Reel Speed). The ACTUAL VALUE dialog box indicates the auto reel speed. 4. Use control knob (A) to raise or lower the reel speed.

NOTE:

This option is only available at full throttle.



Figure 7.147: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To calibrate reel height, follow these steps:

- 1. Place header off the ground 15–25 cm (6–10 in.).
- Use control knob (A) to highlight the FRONT ATTACHMENT icon (B) and press control knob (A) to select it.

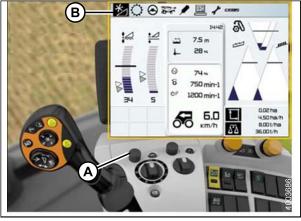


Figure 7.148: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

3. Use control knob (A) to highlight the REEL icon (B), and press control knob to select it.



Figure 7.149: CLAAS Combine Display and Console



Figure 7.150: CLAAS Combine Display and Console



Figure 7.151: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

- 4. Highlight the REEL HEIGHT icon (A), and press control knob to select it.
- 5. Select LEARNING END STOPS (B) from the list.

6. Use control knob (A) to highlight the screwdriver icon (B).

- 7. Press control knob and a progress bar chart (A) will appear.
- 8. Follow the prompts on the screen to raise the reel.
- 9. Follow the prompts on the screen to lower the reel.

10. Ensure the progress bar chart displays 100% (A). The calibration procedure is now complete.



Figure 7.152: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle



Figure 7.153: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Adjusting Auto Reel Height (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To adjust the auto reel height, follow these steps:

1. Use HOTKEY rotary dial (A) to select REEL icon (B).

2. Use control knob (A) to select AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon (B) at the top of the page.

NOTE:

The AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon (C) at the center of the page should be highlighted black. If it is not black, either the end stops have not been set or the AHHC is not active. For instructions, refer to *Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (CLAAS 600 and 700 Series), page 219.*

 Adjust the auto reel height position for the current AHHC position using outer scroll knob (A). To lower the preset reel position, turn the scroll knob counterclockwise; to raise the preset reel position, turn the scroll knob clockwise. The display will update the current setting (B).

NOTE:

If the AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon in the center of the page is not black, an AHHC position is not currently active.

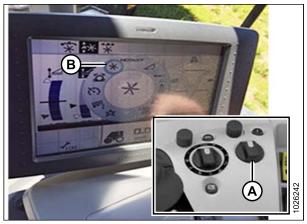


Figure 7.154: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

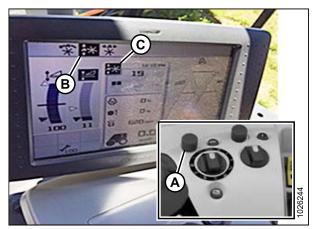


Figure 7.155: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

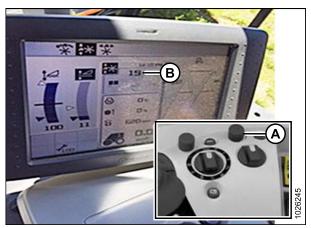


Figure 7.156: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

7.1.9 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

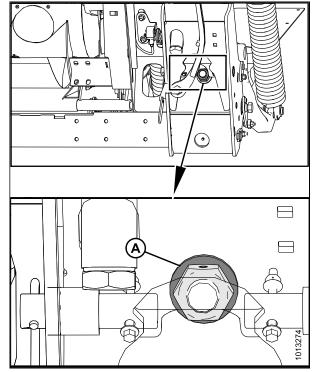
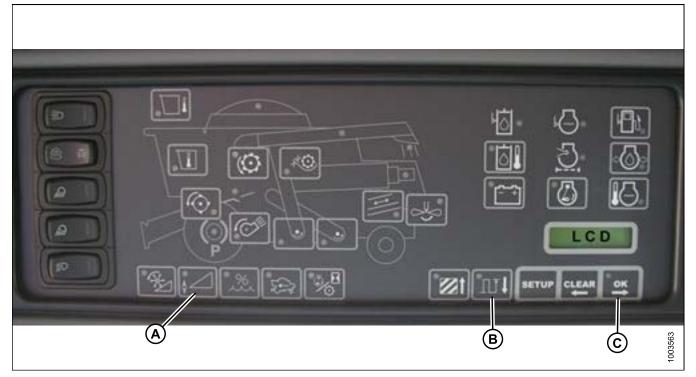


Figure 7.157: Float Lock

Figure 7.158: Float Indicator Box

3. Ensure pointer (A) on the float indicator box is on 0. If necessary, adjust the cable take-up bracket (B) until pointer is on 0.

Figure 7.159: Combine Heads-Up Display



- 4. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 5. Press and hold button (A) on the heads-up display for 3 seconds to enter diagnostic mode.
- 6. Scroll down using button (B) until LEFT is displayed on the LCD screen.
- 7. Press the OK button (C). The number indicated on the LCD screen is the voltage reading from the sensor of the AHHC. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

Engaging the Auto Header Height Control (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The following system components are required in order for the auto header height control (AHHC) to work:

- Main module (PCB board) and header driver module (PCB board) mounted in card box in fuse pane module (FP).
- Multi-Function Control Handle operator inputs.
- Operator inputs mounted in the control console module (CC) panel.

NOTE:

In addition to the above components, the electrohydraulic header lift control valve also is an integral part of the system.





- 1. Press the AUTO MODE (A) button until the AHHC LED light (B) begins flashing. If the RTC light is flashing, press the AUTO MODE (A) button again until it switches to AHHC.
- 2. Briefly press button (A) on the control handle. The AHHC light should change from flashing to solid. The header also should drop toward the ground. The AHHC is now engaged and can be adjusted for height and sensitivity.
- 3. Use controls to adjust height and sensitivity to changing ground conditions such as shallow gullies and field drainage trenches.

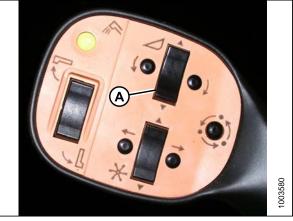


Figure 7.161: Control Handle

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

Calibration should be done on flat, level ground without the header clutches engaged. Header height and header tilt must not be in auto or standby modes. The engine rpm must be above 2000 rpm. The header tilt option on 2004 and earlier model combines does not work with MacDon headers. This system will have to be removed and disabled in order to calibrate the auto header height control (AHHC). Refer to combine manual for instructions.

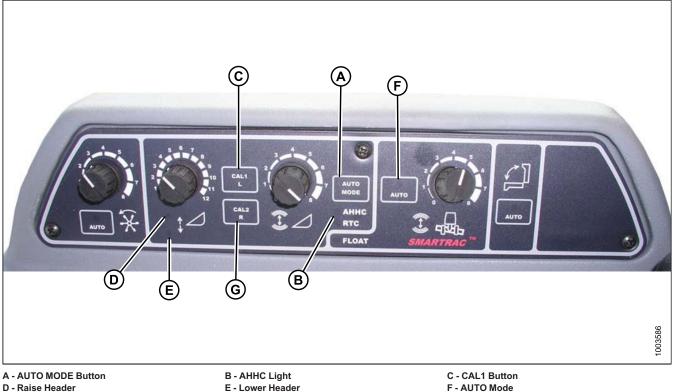
NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.





G - CAL2 Button

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual for instructions.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Press AUTO MODE button (A) until the AHHC light (B) is illuminated.
- 3. Press and hold CAL1 button (C) until you see the following lights flash: raise header (D), lower header (E), tilt auto mode (F), and AHHC (B).
- 4. Fully lower the header, and continue to hold the HEADER LOWER button for 5–8 seconds to ensure float module has separated from header.

- 5. Press CAL2 button (G) until lower header light (E) stops flashing, and release it when the raise header light (D) begins flashing.
- 6. Raise header to its maximum height (ensure the header is resting on the down-stop pads).
- 7. Press CAL2 button (G) until the raise header light (D) turns off.

NOTE:

The following steps are applicable only to 2005 and newer combines with the Smartrac feeder house.

- 8. Wait for the HEADER TILT LEFT light (not shown) to start flashing, and then tilt header to the maximum left position.
- 9. Press CAL2 button (G) until the HEADER TILT LEFT light (not shown) stops flashing, and release button when the HEADER TILT RIGHT light (not shown) begins flashing.
- 10. Tilt the header to the maximum right position.
- 11. Press CAL2 button (G) until all of the following lights flash: raise header (D), lower header (E), height auto mode (A), right header and left header (not shown), and tilt auto mode (F).
- 12. Center the header.
- 13. Press CAL1 button (C) to exit calibration and save all values to the memory. All lights should stop flashing.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

Turning off the Accumulator (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

The accumulator will affect the combine's reaction time and greatly inhibit the auto header height control's performance.

Refer to the combine operator's manual for proper procedure when turning accumulator off and on. For best performance, turn the feeder house accumulator off.

NOTE:

The accumulator is located in front of the front left axle beam.



Figure 7.163: Combine Accumulator ON/OFF Switch A - Accumulator Lever (Off Position)

Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The auto header height control (AHHC) system's stability is affected by hydraulic flow rates. Ensure that the header raise (A) and header lower (B) adjustable restrictors in the hydraulic manifold are adjusted so that it takes approximately 6 seconds to raise the header from ground level to maximum height (hydraulic cylinders fully extended), and approximately 6 seconds to lower the header from maximum height to ground level.

If there is too much header movement (for example, hunting) when the header is on the ground, adjust the lower rate to a slower rate of drop: 7 or 8 seconds.

NOTE:

Make this adjustment with the hydraulic system at normal operating temperature (54.4°C [130°F]) and the engine running at full throttle.

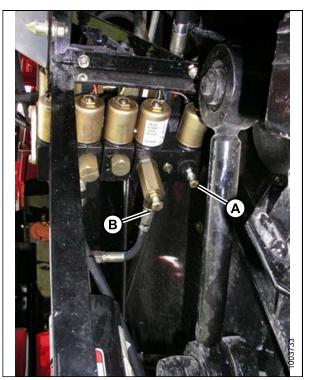


Figure 7.164: Header Raise and Lower Adjustable Restrictors

Adjusting Ground Pressure (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 152 mm (6 in.) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. Refer to Step 4, page 159. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

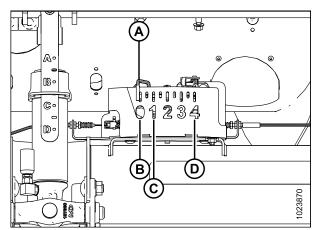


Figure 7.165: Float Indicator Box

- Ensure the header is in auto header height control (AHHC) mode. This is indicated by the AUTO MODE LED light (A) displaying a continuous, solid light.
- 2. The header will lower to the height (ground pressure) corresponding to the position selected with the height control knob (B). Turn the knob counterclockwise for minimum ground pressure, and clockwise for maximum ground pressure.

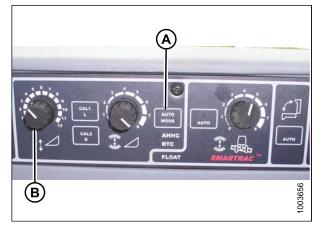


Figure 7.166: AHHC Console

Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.



Figure 7.167: Auto Header Height Control Console

The SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the AHHC reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) is set to maximum (turned completely clockwise), only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. In this position, the cutterbar moves up and down approximately 19 mm (3/4 in.) before the control module signals the hydraulic control valve to raise or lower the header frame.

When the SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) is set to minimum (turned completely counterclockwise), large changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. In this position, the cutterbar moves up and down approximately 51 mm (2 in.) before the control module signals the hydraulic control valve to raise or lower the header frame.

The HEADER SENSE LINE input also changes the range of the sensitivity. When connected to a draper, the counterclockwise position (least sensitive) allows for approximately 102 mm (4 in.) of vertical travel before correction is made.

Troubleshooting Alarms and Diagnostic Faults (Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Display type:

Displayed on tachometer (A) as XX or XXX.

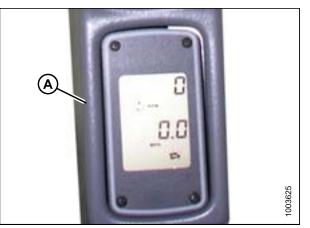
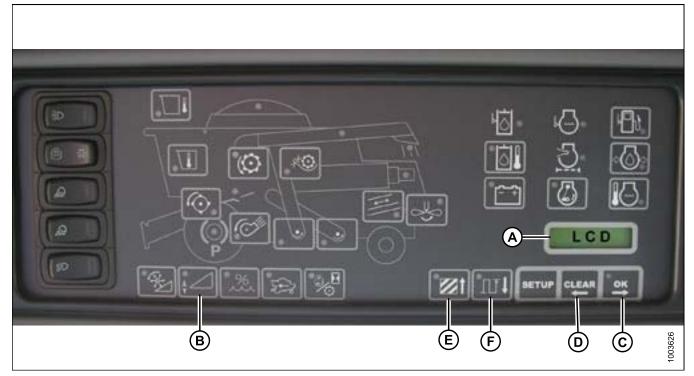


Figure 7.168: Tachometer

Figure 7.169: Combine Heads-Up Display



NOTE:

Displayed on LCD (A) as XX in. or XXX cm.

Alarm conditions:

If an error message is received from the fuse panel, an audible alarm sounds. The alarm buzzer sounds five times every 10 seconds. The LCD on the electronic instrument panel (EIP) indicates the header system in error as HDR CTRL followed by HGT ERR for height, and HDR CTRL followed by TILT ERR for tilt. The header height LED flashes yellow two times every second.

When an alarm condition occurs, a green LED flashes on and off (green, yellow, or red depending on the input). In addition, a message is displayed on the LCD to identify the nature of the alarm. For example, HYD TEMP, OPEN, SHRT will be flashed alternately.

Diagnostic fault failures:

Refer to Figure 7.169, page 231.

Pressing the header height switch (B) for a minimum of 5 seconds will put the EIP in header diagnostic mode. The LCD (shown on previous screen) will display the message HDR DIAG when the EIP has entered header diagnostic mode.

In this mode, after 3 seconds, header fault parameter labels are displayed on the EIP LCD. All the information displayed is read-only.

The OK (C) and CLEAR (D) buttons allow you to scroll through the list of parameters. If there are no active fault codes, the EIP LCD will display NO CODE.

When a parameter is displayed, its label is displayed for 3 seconds, after which its value is automatically displayed.

Pressing the OK button (C) while the value is displayed will advance to the next parameter and display its label.

When a parameter label is displayed and the OK button (C) is pressed before 3 seconds, the parameter's value will be displayed.

Pressing AREA (E) will cycle through the options. When LEFT is displayed on the LCD, press the OK button (C), and the auto header height control (AHHC) voltage will be shown on the display.

Press the DIST button (F) to cycle back through the table.

Press the CLEAR button (D) to exit header diagnostics and return to normal mode.

Refer to 7.1.1 Sensor Operation, page 156.

7.1.10 Gleaner S9 Series Combines

Setting up the Header (Gleaner S9 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The AGCO Tyton terminal (A) is used to set up and manage a MacDon draper header on a Gleaner S9 combine. Use the touch screen display to select the desired item on the screen.



 Figure 7.170: Gleaner S9

 A - Tyton Terminal
 B - Control Handle

 C - Throttle
 D - Header Control Cluster

1. On the top right quadrant of the home screen, touch COMBINE icon (A). The COMBINE MAIN MENU opens.

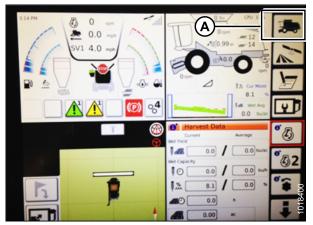


Figure 7.171: Combine Icon on Home Page

2. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A). The HEADER SETTINGS screen opens.

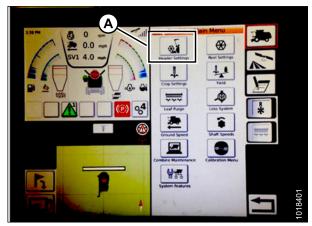


Figure 7.172: Header Settings in Combine Main Menu

- 3. Touch HEADER CONFIGURATION field (A). A screen showing predefined headers opens.
 - If your MacDon header is already set up, it appears on the header list. Touch the MacDon header title (B) to highlight the selection in blue, and then touch the green check mark (E) to continue.
 - If only the default header (D) is shown, touch the ABC button (C), and use the on-screen keyboard to enter the MacDon header information. When complete, select one of the following options to return to the HEADER SETTINGS screen:
 - The green check mark (E) saves the settings
 - The garbage can icon (F) deletes the highlighted header from the list
 - The red X (G) cancels the change(s)

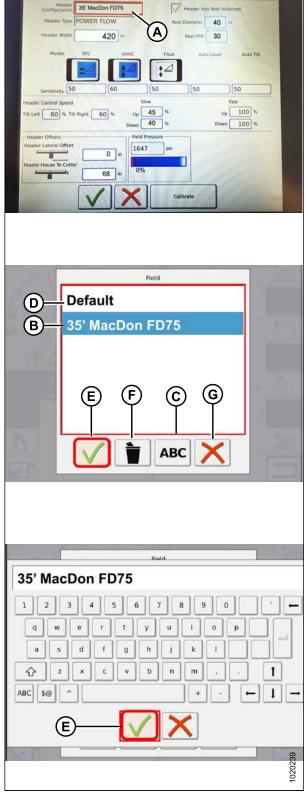


Figure 7.173: Header Configuration Menu on Header Settings Page

4. To specify the type of header installed on the machine, touch the HEADER TYPE field (A).

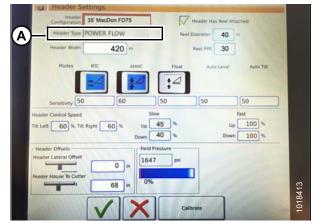


Figure 7.174: Header Settings

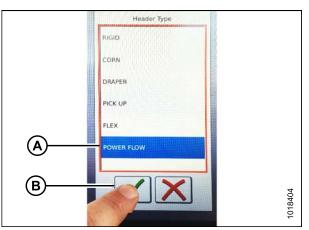


Figure 7.175: Header Type

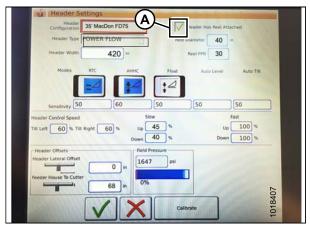


Figure 7.176: Header Settings

- 5. A list of predefined header types appears.
 - For MacDon D1 Series Draper and FD1 Series FlexDraper[®] headers, touch POWER FLOW (A)
 - Touch the green check mark (B) to save the selection and continue

6. Make sure that the HEADER HAS REEL ATTACHED check box (A) is checked.

- 7. Touch the REEL DIAMETER field (A) and a numeric keypad displays. Enter **40** for a MacDon reel.
- Touch the REEL PPR (Pulses Per Revolution) field (B) and enter **30** as the value for your MacDon header. (PPR is determined by the number of teeth on the reel speed sprocket).

9. Touch the green check mark (B) at the bottom of the numeric keypad (A) when complete, or the red X to cancel.

10. When complete, touch the green check mark (A) at the bottom of the HEADER SETTINGS screen.

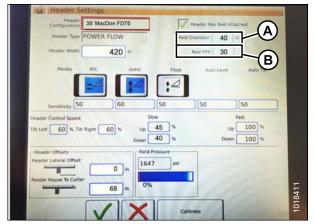


Figure 7.177: Header Settings

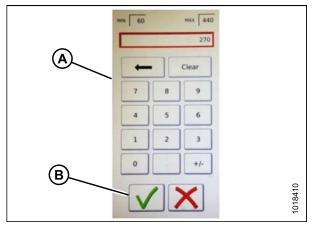


Figure 7.178: Numeric Keypad

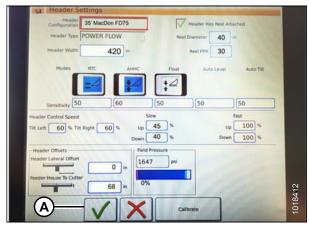


Figure 7.179: Header Settings Page

Setting up Reel Settings (Gleaner S9 Series)



Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. From the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch REEL SETTINGS (A) to open the REEL SETTINGS screen.

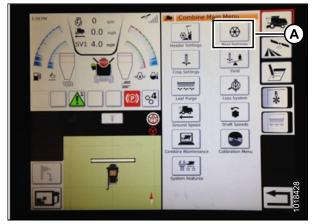


Figure 7.180: Reel Settings on Combine Main Menu

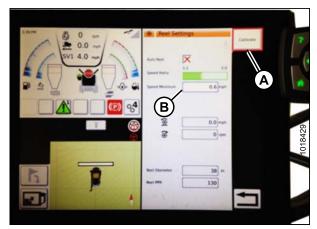


Figure 7.181: Reel Settings Calibration

 To set minimum reel speed, touch the SPEED MINIMUM FIELD (B). The on-screen keyboard displays. Enter the desired value. Touch the green check mark to accept the new value, or the red X to cancel. The reel speed is shown in mph and rpm.

NOTE:

At the bottom of the REEL SETTINGS screen, the reel diameter and reel pulses per revolution (PPR) are displayed. These values have already been set in the HEADER SETTINGS screen.

3. Reel speed is calibrated in the REEL SETTINGS screen by touching the CALIBRATE button (A) in the top right of the screen.

- 4. The CALIBRATION WIZARD opens and displays a hazard message warning screen.
- Make sure to meet all the conditions listed on the CALIBRATION WIZARD warning screen. Press the green check mark to accept and start reel calibration. Pressing the red X will cancel the calibration procedure.

6. A message appears in the CALIBRATION WIZARD stating that reel calibration has started. The reel will begin turning slowly and increase to high speed. A progress bar is provided. If necessary, touch the red X to cancel. Otherwise, wait for the message that reel calibration has completed successfully. Touch the green check mark to save the calibrated settings.



Figure 7.182: Calibration Wizard

| Actual Reel Speed | 5.0 | rpm | |
|-------------------|------|-----|--|
| Minimum Value | 36.0 | | |
| Maximum Value | 85.0 | - | |

Figure 7.183: Calibration Progress

Setting up Automatic Header Controls (Gleaner S9 Series)

Automatic header functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS screen.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Automatic Control Functions: There are toggle (OFF/ON) switches on the HEADER SETTINGS screen for the automatic control functions. For MacDon headers, ensure the following two functions are enabled as shown:
 - RTC (return to cut) (A)
 - AHHC (automatic header height control) (B)

All other switches are disabled (not highlighted).

- 2. The **Sensitivity** setting (C) controls how responsive a control (RTC or AHHC) is to a given change in sensor feedback. The setting fields are located directly below the toggle switches. To enter a new sensitivity setting, touch the setting field below the specific toggle switch, and enter the new value in the on-screen keyboard.
 - Increase sensitivity if the combine does not change the feeder position quickly enough when in Auto Mode.
 - Decrease sensitivity if the combine hunts for a position in Auto Mode.

NOTE:

Recommended sensitivity starting points for MacDon headers are:

- 50 for RTC (A)
- 60 for AHHC (B)
- Header Speed: The HEADER CONTROL SPEED area (A) on the HEADER SETTINGS screen is used to adjust the following speeds:
 - Tilt left and right is the lateral tilt of the combine faceplate
 - Header up and down (slow and fast speeds) is a two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second

NOTE:

Recommended header control speed starting points

- Slow: 45 up / 40 down
- Fast: 100 up / 100 down

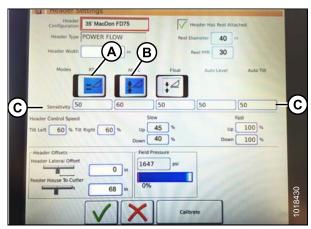


Figure 7.184: Automatic Controls and Sensitivity Settings

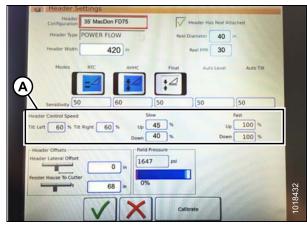


Figure 7.185: Header Speed Control Settings

- 4. **Header Offsets (A):** Offset distances are important for yield mapping. There are two adjustable dimensions on the HEADER SETTINGS screen:
 - Header Lateral Offset: the distance between the centerline of the header and the centerline of the machine. This should be set at **0** for a MacDon header.
 - Feeder House to Cutter: the distance from the machine interface to the cutterbar. This should be set at **68** for a MacDon header.

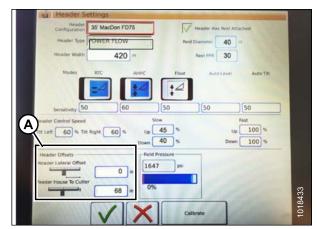


Figure 7.186: Header Offset Settings

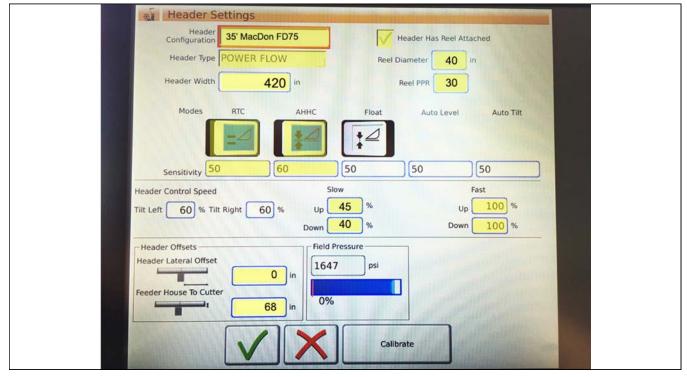


Figure 7.187: MacDon Header Settings Inputs

Calibrating the Header (Gleaner S9 Series)

The auto header control functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS screen.

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A).

2. Touch CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom right of the screen. The HEADER CALIBRATION screen displays.

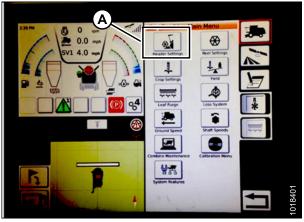


Figure 7.188: Combine Main Menu

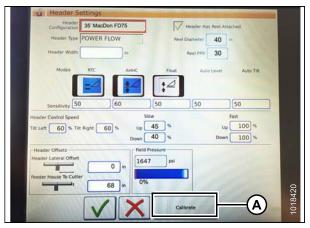


Figure 7.189: Calibration

The right side of the screen shows the Header Calibration information (A). Results are shown for a variety of sensors (B):

- Left and right header sensor (voltage) (values will be the same with MacDon headers)
- Header height sensor (mA)
- Tilt position sensor (mA)

The following valid modes are shown with check marks (C) below the sensor values (B):

- Return to cut
- Automatic header height control

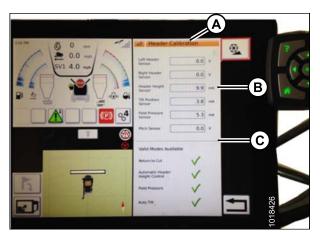


Figure 7.190: Header Calibration Page

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

 On the control handle, touch the HEADER DOWN button (A). Sensor values start changing on the HEADER CALIBRATION screen as the header lowers.

NOTE:

The header needs to be lowered all the way, and then raised off the ground. The range should be between **0.5** and **4.5 V**. If the value is not in that range, the sensor needs to be adjusted. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162* or *Adjusting Voltage Limits: Two-Sensor System, page 163*.

4. When the sensor values are stable, touch the CALIBRATE icon (A).



Figure 7.191: Header Down Switch

| 0.0 | Left Header Calibri | 0.0 v | € | |
|----------|--|---------|----------|---------|
| | Neader Height | 9.9 mk | | |
| | A A THE OF A REAL PROPERTY OF | 5.3 mit | | |
| | Valid Modes Available Return to Cut | ~ | | |
| B | Automatic Header Height Control | ~ ~ | | |
| | Add TR | ~ | L | 1018422 |

Figure 7.192: Header Calibration

- 5. The hazard message warning screen for HEADER CALIBRATION appears. Make sure that all conditions are met.
- 6. Touch the green check mark at the bottom of the screen to start the CALIBRATION WIZARD.

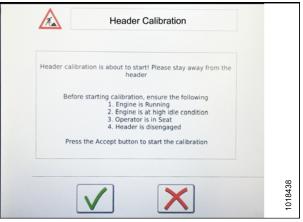


Figure 7.193: Header Calibration Warning

| | Verit | fication of Maximur | n | |
|-------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|----------------|---|
| Left Header Sense | r 4.1 v | Right Header Sensor | (4,1) v | |
| Header Height Sensor | 7.7 mA | Field Pressure Sensor | 13.9 mA | |
| Tilt Position Sense | 4.8 mA | | | |
| Verifying | the maximum v | values of header | height sensors | |
| Progress | | 69% | - | - |
| _ | - | | | |

Figure 7.194: Calibration In Progress

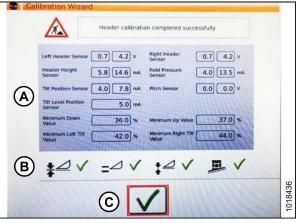


Figure 7.195: Completed Calibration Page

A progress bar is provided and the calibration can be stopped at any time by touching the red X. The header moves automatically and erratically during this process.

 When the calibration is complete, a message displays, and summary information (A) is shown. Green check marks confirm the functions have been calibrated (B). Touch the bottom green check mark (C) to save.

NOTE:

Touch the CALIBRATION icon (A) on the COMBINE MAIN MENU screen to open the CALIBRATION MENU where you can choose from a variety of calibrations including header and reel calibration.

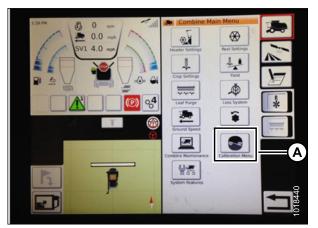


Figure 7.196: Direct Calibration Menu

Operating Header (Gleaner S9 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The following controls are used to operate the auto header height control (AHHC) functions:

- Tyton Terminal (A)
- Control Handle (B)
- Throttle (C)
- Header Control Cluster (D)

Use the combine operator's manual to familiarize yourself with the controls.



Figure 7.197: Gleaner S9

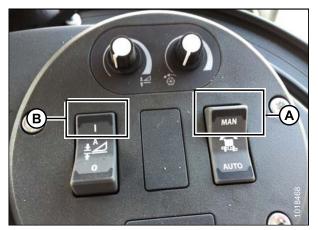


Figure 7.198: Header Control Cluster

- 1. With the header running, set lateral tilt switch (A) to MANUAL.
- 2. Engage the AHHC by pressing the switch (B) upward to the I position.

3. Press the AHHC control switch (A) on the control handle to engage the AHHC. The header moves to the current setpoint position.

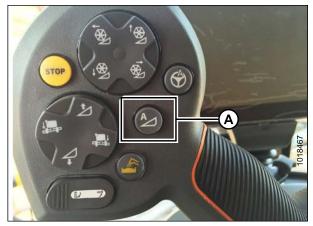


Figure 7.199: AHHC on Control Handle

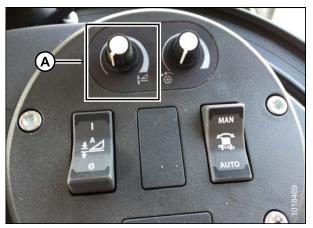


Figure 7.200: Header Control Cluster

4. Use the HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) as necessary to fine-tune the position.

Header In-Field Settings

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. To view header group settings, touch HEADER icon (A) on the right side of the home screen.
- 2. The following information is displayed:
 - CURRENT POSITION of the header (B).
 - SETPOINT cut-off position (C) (indicated by red line)
 - HEADER symbol (D) touch to adjust the setpoint cut-off position using the scroll wheel on the right side of the Tyton terminal.
 - CUT HEIGHT for the AHHC (E) fine-tune with the header height setpoint control dial on the header control cluster.
 - HEADER WORKING WIDTH (F)
 - HEADER PITCH (G)

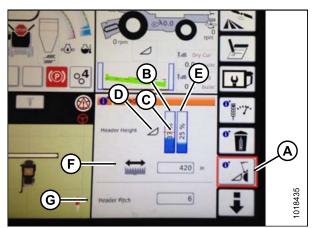


Figure 7.201: Header Groups

3. Touching a field opens the on-screen keyboard so that values can be adjusted. Enter the new value and touch the green check mark when complete.

NOTE:

NOTE:

The scroll wheel (A) is located on the right side of the Tyton terminal.

HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) is on the



Figure 7.202: Adjustment Wheel on Right Side of Tyton Terminal



Figure 7.203: Header Control Cluster

header control cluster.

7.1.11 John Deere 60 Series Combines

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere 60 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.

2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

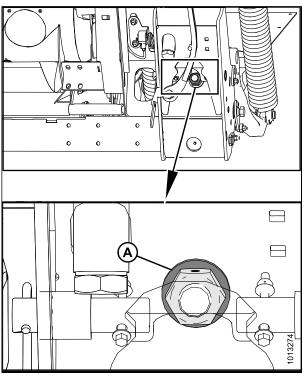


Figure 7.204: Float Lock

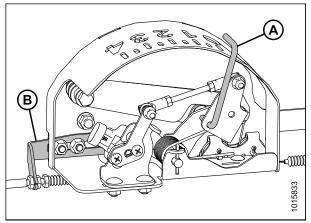
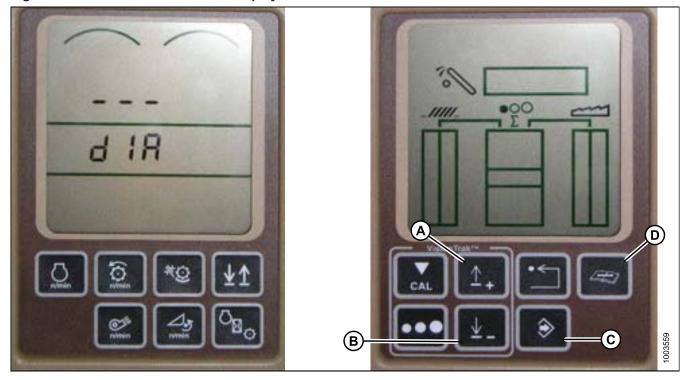


Figure 7.205: Float Indicator Box

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on the float indicator is on **0**.

Figure 7.206: John Deere Combine Display



- 4. Press DIAGNOSTIC button (D) on the monitor—DIA appears on the monitor.
- 5. Press UP button (A) until EO1 appears on the monitor—this is the header adjustments.
- 6. Press ENTER button (C).
- 7. Press the UP (A) or DOWN button (B) until 24 is displayed on the top portion of the monitor—this is the voltage reading for the sensor.
- 8. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 9. Start the combine, and fully lower feeder house to the ground.

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

- 10. Check the sensor reading on the monitor. The reading should be above 0.5 V.
- 11. Raise the header so it is just off the ground. The reading on the monitor should read below 4.5 V.
- 12. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.*

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 60 Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Rest header on down stops, and unlock float.
- 3. Put wings in locked position.
- 4. Start the combine.
- 5. Press the DIAGNOSTIC button (A) on the monitor. DIA appears on the monitor.
- 6. Press the CAL button (B). DIA-CAL appears on the monitor.



Figure 7.207: John Deere Combine Display

Figure 7.208: John Deere Combine Display

- 7. Press the UP or DOWN buttons until HDR appears on the monitor.
- 8. Press the ENTER button. HDR H-DN appears on the monitor.
- 9. Fully lower feeder house to the ground.

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

- 10. Press the CAL button (A) to save the calibration of the header. HDR H-UP appears on the monitor.
- 11. Raise the header 3 feet off the ground and press the CAL button (A). EOC appears on the monitor.
- 12. Press the ENTER button (B) to save the calibration of the header. Your AHHC is now calibrated.

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. Refer to *Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab* (John Deere 60 Series), page 246.

NOTE:

After the calibration is complete, adjust combine operation settings to ensure proper field operation.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

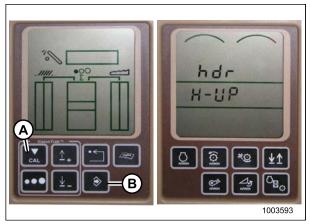


Figure 7.209: John Deere Combine Display

Turning the Accumulator Off (John Deere 60 Series)

The accumulator is a hydraulic device that cushions the shock of hydraulic fluid when installing a heavy header onto the combine.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Press DIAGNOSTIC button (A) on the monitor. DIA appears on the monitor.
- 2. Press the UP button (B) until EO1 appears on the monitor, and press ENTER (D). This is the header adjustment.
- 3. Press the UP (B) or DOWN (C) button until 132 is displayed on the top portion of the monitor. This is the reading for the accumulator.
- 4. Press ENTER (D) to select 132 as the accumulator reading (this will allow you to change the display to a three-digit number so it has a 0 in it, for example, x0x).
- 5. Press the UP (B) or DOWN (C) button until the desired number is displayed, and press the CAL button (E).
- 6. Press ENTER (D) to save the changes. The accumulator is now deactivated.

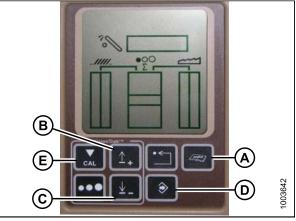


Figure 7.210: John Deere Combine Display

Setting the Sensing Grain Header Height to 50 (John Deere 60 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To set the sensing grain header height, follow these steps:

- 1. Press DIAGNOSTIC button (A) on the monitor. DIA appears on the monitor.
- 2. Press the UP button (B) until EO1 appears on the monitor, and press ENTER (D). This is the header adjustment.
- 3. Press the UP (B) or DOWN (C) button until 128 is displayed on the top portion of the monitor. This is the reading for the sensor.
- 4. Press ENTER (D) to select 128 as the sensor reading (this will allow you to change the display to a three-digit number so it has a 50 in it).
- 5. Press the UP (B) or DOWN (C) button until the desired number is displayed, and press the CAL button (E).
- 6. Press ENTER (D) to save the changes. The height is now set.

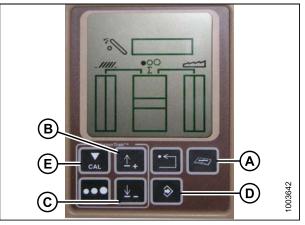


Figure 7.211: John Deere Combine Display

NOTE:

Do **NOT** use the active header float function (A) in combination with the MacDon auto header height control (AHHC)—the two systems will counteract one another. The header symbol (B) on the display should **NOT** have a wavy line under it and should appear exactly as shown on the Active Header Control Display in Figure 7.212, page 252.

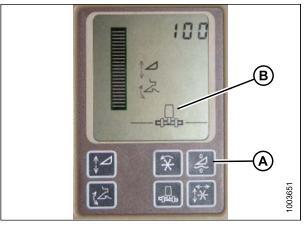


Figure 7.212: John Deere Combine Display

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 60 Series)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Press the DIAGNOSTIC button (A) on the monitor. DIA appears on the monitor.
- 2. Press the UP button (B) until EO1 appears on the monitor, and press ENTER (D). This is the header adjustment.
- 3. Press the UP (B) or DOWN (C) button until 112 is displayed on the monitor. This is your sensitivity setting.

NOTE:

The lower the reading, the higher the sensitivity. Ideal operating range is typically between 50 and 80.

- 4. Press ENTER (D) to select 112 as the sensitivity setting (this will allow you to change the first digit of the number sequence).
- Press UP (B) or DOWN (C) until the desired number is displayed, then press the CAL button (E). This will bring you to the second digit. Repeat this procedure until the desired setting is achieved.
- 6. Press ENTER (D) to save changes.

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.

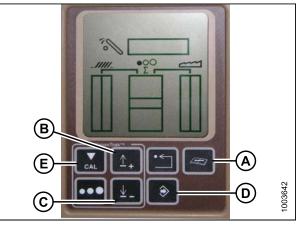


Figure 7.213: John Deere Combine Display

Adjusting the Threshold for the Drop Rate Valve (John Deere 60 Series)

This procedure explains how to adjust the point at which the restrictor valve opens allowing full flow to the lift cylinders.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.

- 1. Press DIAGNOSTIC button (A) on the monitor. DIA appears on the monitor.
- 2. Press the UP button (B) until EO1 appears on the monitor and press ENTER (C). This is the header adjustment.
- 3. Press the UP (B) or DOWN button until 114 is displayed on the top portion of the monitor. This is the setting that adjusts when the fast drop rate starts with respect to the dead band.

NOTE:

The default setting is 100. Ideal operating range is typically between 60 and 85.

- 4. Press ENTER (C) to select 114 as the fast drop rate (this will allow you to change the first digit of the number sequence).
- Press UP (B) or DOWN (E) until the desired number is displayed, then press the CAL button (D). This will bring you to the second digit. Repeat this procedure until the desired setting is achieved.
- 6. Press ENTER (C) to save changes.

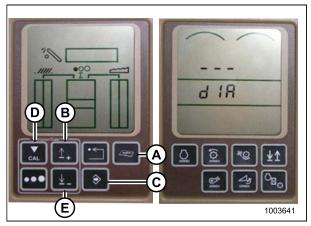


Figure 7.214: John Deere Combine Display

7.1.12 John Deere 70 Series Combines

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere 70 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

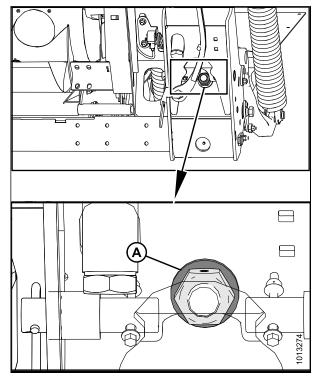


Figure 7.215: Float Lock

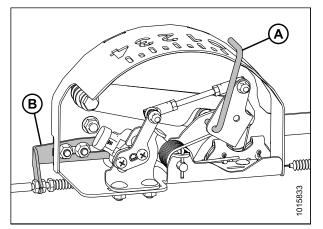


Figure 7.216: Float Indicator Box

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until the pointer (A) on the float indicator is on 0.

4. Press the HOME PAGE button (A) on the main screen of the monitor.



Figure 7.217: John Deere Combine Display

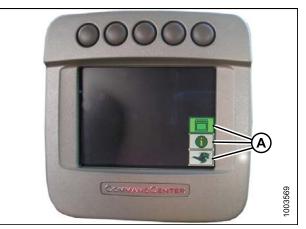


Figure 7.218: John Deere Combine Display

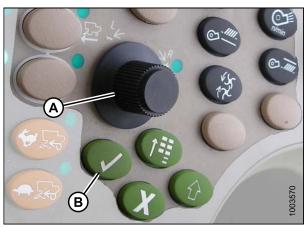


Figure 7.219: John Deere Combine Control Console

5. Ensure the three icons (A) shown in the illustration at right appear on the monitor.

6. Use scroll knob (A) to highlight the middle icon (the

This will bring up the Message Center.

green i) and press the check mark button (B) to select it.

- 7. Use the scroll knob to highlight DIAGNOSTIC ADDRESSES (A) from the right column and select it by pressing the check mark button.
- 8. Use the scroll knob to highlight the drop-down box (B) and press the check mark button to select it.

9. Use the scroll knob to highlight LC 1.001 VEHICLE (A) and press the check mark button to select it.

 Use the scroll knob to highlight the down arrow (A) and press the check mark button to scroll through the list until 029 DATA (B) is displayed and voltage reading (C) appears on the monitor.



Figure 7.220: John Deere Combine Display



Figure 7.221: John Deere Combine Display



Figure 7.222: John Deere Combine Display

- 11. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 12. Start the combine and fully lower feeder house to the ground.

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

- 13. Check the sensor reading on the monitor.
- 14. Raise the header so it is just off the ground and recheck the sensor reading.
- 15. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162*.

Calibrating Feeder House Speed (John Deere 70 Series)

The feeder house speed must be calibrated before you calibrate the auto header height control (AHHC) system. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 70 Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual for instructions.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.
- 4. Start the combine.
- 5. Press the button located fourth from the left along the top of the monitor (A) to select the icon that resembles an open book with a wrench on it (B).
- 6. Press the top button (A) a second time to enter diagnostics and calibration mode.

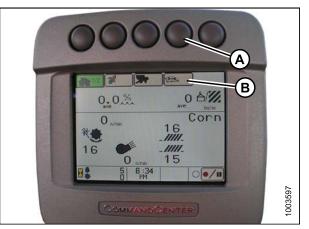


Figure 7.223: John Deere Combine Display

- Select HEADER in box (A) by scrolling down to the box using the scroll knob, and then pressing the check mark button (knob and button are shown in Figure 7.225, page 258).
- 8. Scroll down to the lower right icon that resembles an arrow in a diamond (B) and press the check mark button to select it.



Figure 7.224: John Deere Combine Display

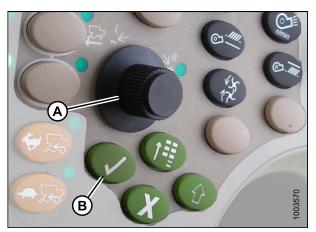


Figure 7.225: John Deere Combine Control Console A - Scroll Knob B - Check Mark Button

9. Follow the steps listed on the monitor to perform the calibration.

NOTE:

If an error code appears on screen, the sensor is not in the correct working range. Refer to *Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S and T Series), page 261* to check and adjust the range.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere 70 Series)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Press button (A) twice and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the monitor (the lower the reading, the lower the sensitivity).
- 2. Use scroll knob (B) to adjust the sensitivity setting. The adjustment will be saved automatically.

NOTE:

If the screen remains idle for a short period of time, it will automatically return to the previous screen. Pressing the check mark button (C) also will return the monitor to the previous screen.

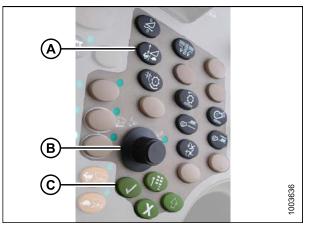


Figure 7.226: John Deere Combine Control Console

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 7.227: John Deere Combine Display

Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate (John Deere 70 Series)

The weight of the header will dictate the rate at which the header can be raised or lowered during operation.

To manually adjust the header raise/lower rate, do the following steps:

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Press button (A) and the current raise/lower rate setting will appear on the monitor (the lower the reading, the slower the rate).
- 2. Use scroll knob (B) to adjust the rate. The adjustment will be saved automatically.

NOTE:

If the screen remains idle for a short period of time, it will automatically return to the previous screen. Pressing the check mark button (C) will also return the monitor to the previous screen.

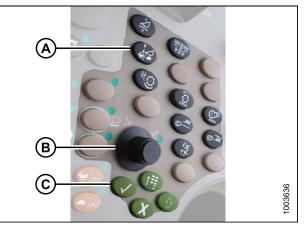


Figure 7.228: John Deere Combine Control Console

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 7.229: John Deere Combine Display

7.1.13 John Deere S and T Series Combines

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S and T Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

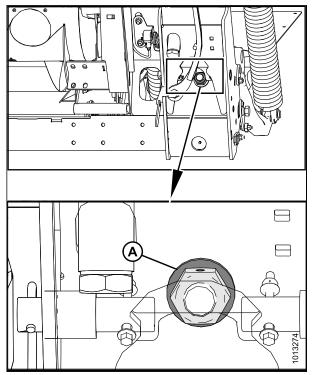


Figure 7.230: Float Lock

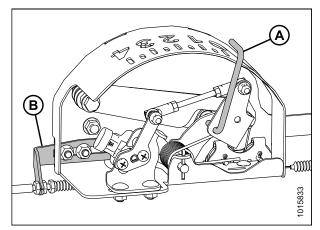


Figure 7.231: Float Indicator Box

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until the pointer (A) on the float indicator is on 0.

4. Press CALIBRATION icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen appears.



Figure 7.232: John Deere Combine Display

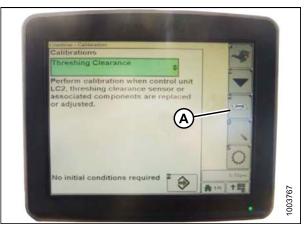


Figure 7.233: John Deere Combine Display



Figure 7.234: John Deere Combine Display

5. Press DIAGNOSTIC READINGS icon (A) on the CALIBRATION screen. The DIAGNOSTIC READINGS screen appears. This screen provides access to calibrations, header options, and diagnostic information.

6. Select AHHC RESUME (A) and a list of calibration options appears.

- 7. Select the AHHC SENSING option.
- Press the icon that resembles an arrow in a box (A). The AHHC SENSING menu appears and five screens of information are displayed.



Figure 7.235: John Deere Combine Display

- 9. Press icon (A) until it reads Page 5 near the top of the screen and the following sensor readings appear:
 - LEFT HEADER HEIGHT
 - CENTER HEADER HEIGHT
 - RIGHT HEADER HEIGHT

A reading is displayed for both left and right sensors. On the MacDon header, there may be one sensor located in the float indicator box (standard) or two sensors located at the back of the float module side frame (optional).



Figure 7.236: John Deere Combine Display

- 10. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 11. Start the combine and fully lower feeder house to the ground.

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

- 12. Check the sensor reading on the monitor.
- 13. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.*

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere S and T Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual for instructions.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.
- 4. Press the DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen appears.

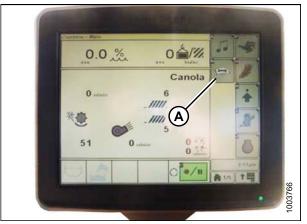


Figure 7.237: John Deere Combine Display

5. Select THRESHING CLEARANCE (A) and a list of calibration options appears.



Figure 7.238: John Deere Combine Display

6. Select FEEDER HOUSE SPEED (A) from the list of calibration options.

NOTE:

Feeder house speed calibration must be done before header calibration.

7. With FEEDER HOUSE SPEED selected, press icon (A). The icon will turn green.

8. Click button (A) and instructions will appear on screen to guide you through the remaining calibration steps.



214685



Figure 7.239: John Deere Combine Display

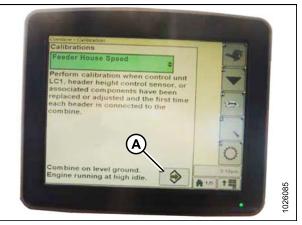


Figure 7.240: John Deere Combine Display



Figure 7.241: John Deere Combine Display

9. Select HEADER (A) from the list of calibration options.

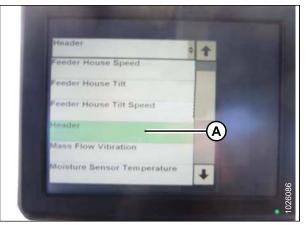


Figure 7.242: John Deere Combine Display

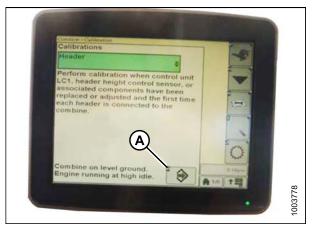


Figure 7.243: John Deere Combine Display



Figure 7.244: John Deere Combine Display

10. With HEADER selected, press icon (A). The icon will turn green.

11. Click button (A) and instructions will appear on screen to guide you through the remaining calibration steps.

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. Refer to *Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab* (John Deere S and T Series), page 261.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (John Deere S and T Series)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press button (A) twice and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the monitor.



Figure 7.245: John Deere Combine Command Center

Header Height Sensitivity

Figure 7.246: John Deere Combine Display

2. Press the – or + icon (A) to adjust rates.

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.

Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate (John Deere S and T Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 152 mm (6 in.) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. Refer to Step *4, page 159*. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

1. Press button (A) and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the monitor.

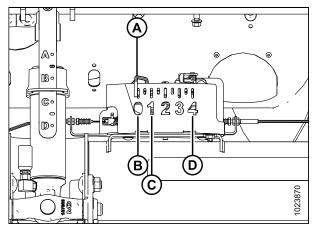


Figure 7.247: Float Indicator Box



Figure 7.248: John Deere Combine Command Center



Figure 7.249: John Deere Combine Display

2. Press the - or + icon (A) to adjust rates.

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.

Setting Preset Cutting Height (John Deere S and T Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header (152 mm [6 in.]) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. Refer to Step *4, page 159*. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

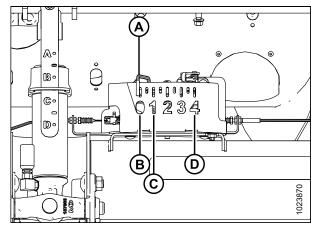


Figure 7.250: Float Indicator Box

 Press the COMBINE – HEADER SETUP icon (A) on the main screen. The COMBINE – HEADER SETUP screen appears. This screen is used to set various header settings such as reel speed, header width, and height of feeder house for acre counter engagement.



Figure 7.251: Combine Display

| FLEX PL | ATFORM | | |
|---------|----------------|----------|----------|
| 0.4 | | | Te an |
| | Min Reel Spee | and some | |
| | Widt | h 30.0 | |
| | | | |
| Reco | rd Stop Height | In | |
| | | 49% | 3044 |
| | | | A 10 1 1 |

Figure 7.252: Combine Display

 Select the COMBINE – HEADER SETUP AHC icon (A). The COMBINE – HEADER SETUP AHC screen appears. 3. Select AUTO HEIGHT SENSING (A), RETURN TO CUT (B), and REEL POSITION (C) icons.

NOTE:

If REEL POSITION icon (C) cannot be selected (no check mark), the reel height sensor requires calibration. Refer to *Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (John Deere S and T Series), page 276.*

- 4. Engage the header.
- 5. Move header to desired position and use knob (A) to fine tune position.
- 6. Move reel to desired position.

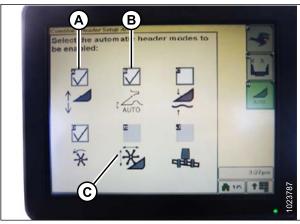


Figure 7.253: Combine Display



Figure 7.254: Combine Control Console



Figure 7.255: Control Handle Buttons

- 7. Press and hold preset switch 2 (B) until 1 reel height icon flashes on monitor.
- 8. Repeat previous three steps for preset switch 3 (C).
- Select an appropriate ground pressure setting. Use preset button 2 (B) on the control handle for a low ground pressure setting in muddy or soft soil conditions, and preset 3 (C) for a high ground pressure setting in firm soil conditions and a higher ground speed.

NOTE:

Preset button 1 (A) is reserved for header lift on the headland and is not used for cutting on ground.

NOTE:

When the AHHC is engaged, the AHHC icon (A) appears on the monitor and the number indicating which button was pressed (B) is displayed on the screen.

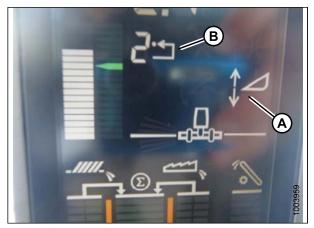


Figure 7.256: Combine Display

Calibrating Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Range (John Deere S and T Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

This procedure applies only to model year 2015 and later John Deere S and T Series combines.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The feeder house fore/aft tilt is controlled by buttons (C) and (D) at the back of the control handle.



Figure 7.257: John Deere Control Handle

NOTE:

The feeder house fore/aft tilt controls can be changed to work with buttons E and F by pressing the control handle icon (A) and then selecting FEEDER HOUSE FORE/AFT TILT from the drop-down menu (B).

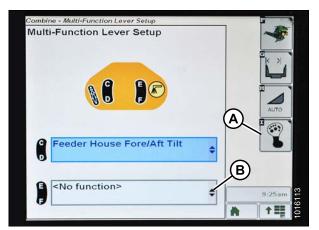


Figure 7.258: John Deere Combine Display

To calibrate the feeder house fore-aft tilt range, follow these steps:

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.

the list of calibration options.

4. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen displays.

5. Select the CALIBRATIONS drop-down menu (A) to view

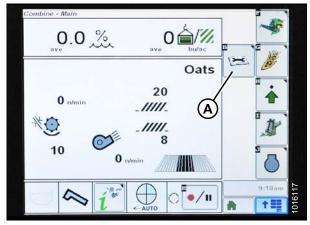


Figure 7.259: John Deere Combine Display

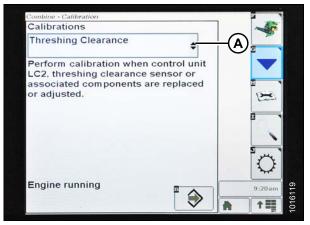


Figure 7.260: John Deere Combine Display

 Press arrow (A) to cycle up through the calibration options and select FEEDER HOUSE FORE/AFT TILT RANGE.

7. Press ENTER icon (A).

 Follow the instructions that appear on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. Refer to *Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S and T Series), page 261.*

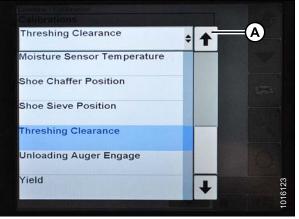


Figure 7.261: John Deere Combine Display

| Combine - Calibration Calibrations | | |
|--|---------------------|--------|
| Feeder House Fore/Aft Tilt F | Range 🛊 | 2 |
| Perform calibration when co LC1, or control unit CAB, or house tilt fore/aft position se associated components are adjusted. | feeder ensor, or | |
| Combine on level ground. | A | 9:20am |
| Engine running at low idle | | 1203m |

Figure 7.262: John Deere Combine Display

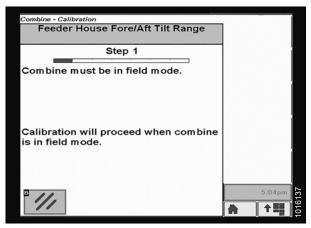


Figure 7.263: John Deere Combine Display

Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (John Deere S and T Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press CALIBRATION icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen appears.

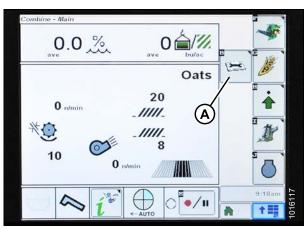


Figure 7.264: John Deere Combine Display

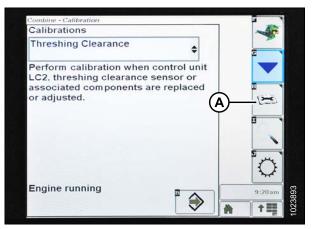


Figure 7.265: John Deere Combine Display

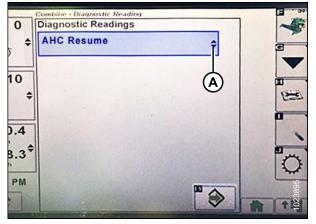


Figure 7.266: John Deere Combine Display

 Press DIAGNOSTIC READINGS icon (A) on the CALIBRATION screen. The DIAGNOSTIC READINGS screen appears. This screen provides access to calibrations, header options, and diagnostic information.

3. Select drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.

4. Scroll down and select REEL RESUME (A).



Figure 7.267: John Deere Combine Display

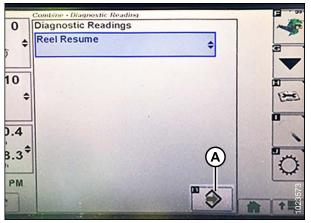


Figure 7.268: John Deere Combine Display

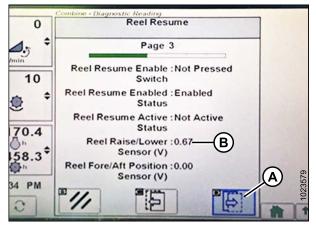


Figure 7.269: John Deere Combine Display

5. Press ENTER icon (A). The REEL RESUME page displays.

- 6. Press NEXT PAGE icon (A) to cycle to page 3.
- 7. Lower the reel to view the low voltage (B). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.

- 8. Raise the reel to view the high voltage (A). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
- 9. If either voltage is not within the correct range, refer to .

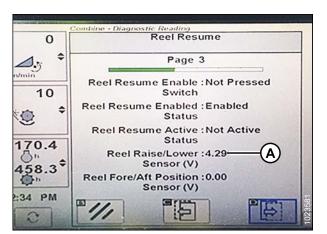


Figure 7.270: John Deere Combine Display

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor (John Deere S and T Series)

This procedure applies only to model year 2015 and later John Deere S and T Series combines.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To calibrate reel height, follow these steps:

- 1. Place header off the ground 15–25 cm (6–10 in.).
- 2. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen displays.

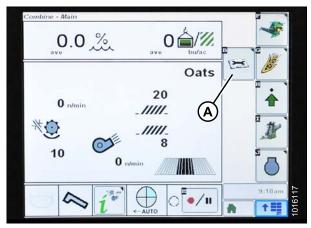
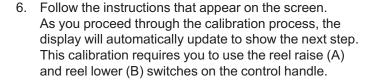


Figure 7.271: John Deere Combine Display

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

- 3. Select CALIBRATIONS drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.
- 4. Scroll through the list of options and select REEL POSITION.
- 5. Press ENTER icon (B).



7. Press and hold REEL LOWER switch until reel is fully lowered. Continue holding REEL LOWER switch until prompted by the display.

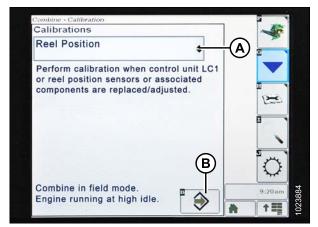


Figure 7.272: John Deere Combine Display



Figure 7.273: John Deere Control Handle

| 0.00 | Reel Position | |
|------------------------|---|---|
| ∠ * mi/h | Step 7 | |
| 23.60 //. \$ | Press and hold reel lower switch. | |
| ac 8315 ∏∱ ft | Calibration will proceed automatically. | |
| 2 | · /// | ń |

Figure 7.274: John Deere Combine Display

8. Press and hold REEL RAISE switch until reel is fully raised. Continue holding REEL RAISE switch until prompted by the display.

9. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION COMPLETE message is displayed on the screen. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER icon (A).

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. Refer to *Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (John Deere S and T Series), page 274.*

| | Combine - Calibration | 7 |
|---------------------|---|---|
| 0.00 | Reel Position | |
| mi/h | Step 9 | 1 |
| 23.60 | Press and hold reel raise switch. | |
| ‴//. ≑ ac | | |
| 8315 ∏∱ ft \$ | Calibration will proceed automatically. | |
| 0 | B /// | ñ |

Figure 7.275: John Deere Combine Display

| 0.00 | Reel Position |
|------------------|---|
| , ≫ ◆ | Step 25 |
| 23.60 | Calibration complete. |
| //. ◆ ac | |
| 8315 ∏∱ ft | Select ENTER to save changes and exit. Select ABORT to exit without saving changes. |
| 0 | |

Figure 7.276: John Deere Combine Display

7.1.14 John Deere S7 Series Combines

Setting up Header (John Deere S7 Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to combine operator's manual for updates.

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

1. Press header button (A) on the panel below the display. The HEADER page opens.



Figure 7.277: John Deere S7 Display

| Flex Platform Header Type | -A | <mark>8</mark> ⊿ 0.0 h | K > 30 ft |
|------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| Raise / Lower Speed | Tilt Speed | Height Sensitivity | Tilt Sensitivity |
| \$∕≉ 50 | ₩ ₩/# 50 | ↓ 50 | 50 E |
| Auto C | ontrol | Fore/ | Aft Tilt |
| 12 12 12 12 | 2 tz | 13 | Ø 3.0 |

Figure 7.278: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

| | | 0 | |
|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|------|
| Head | er Details Flex Platforn | | |
| lead | Width | Work Recording | 0 ft |
| | 30 ft | 50 % Record Stop Height | vity |
| 1 | | Set to Current Height | 0 |
| 50 | Minimum Reel Speed | Hours | |
| ¥ | 10 n/min | 0.0 h | |
| | | | Ј |

Figure 7.279: John Deere S7 Display – Header Details Window

2. Select HEADER TYPE field (A). The HEADER DETAILS window opens.

- 3. Verify correct header width is displayed under WIDTH.
- 4. To change header width, select field (A). The WIDTH window opens.

5. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the correct header width, and then press OK.



Figure 7.280: John Deere S7 Display – Setting Header Width

| ⊿ He | ader 😗 😚 | A state of the sta | × |
|-------|--------------------------------|--|---------|
| Elso. | Header Details Flex Platform | 0 A-x | |
| Flex | Width | Work Recording | 0 ft |
| Raise | K X 30 ft | 50 % Record Stop Height | wity |
| 1 | | Set to Current Height | 0 |
| 50 | Minimum Reel Speed | Hours | |
| | ₩ 10 n/min | 0.0 h | 1022760 |
| | | 13.0 | 1022 |

Figure 7.281: John Deere S7 Display – Header Details Window

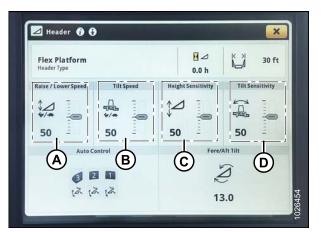


Figure 7.282: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

6. Press window close button (A) in top right corner of the window to return to the HEADER page.

 The raise/lower speed (A), tilt speed (B), height sensitivity (C), and tilt sensitivity (D) can all be adjusted from this page. Select the option you would like to adjust. This example shows the raise/lower speed adjustment.

- 8. Use the + and buttons (A) to adjust the setting.
- 9. Press window close button in top right corner of the window to return to the HEADER page.

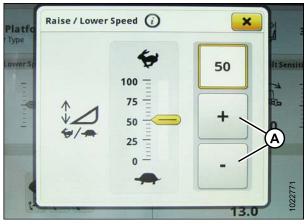


Figure 7.283: John Deere S7 Display – Raise/Lower Speed Adjustment

| Flex Platform Header Type | | 0.0 h | K ≫ 30 ft |
|------------------------------|--------------------|---|------------------|
| Raise / Lower Speed | Tilt Speed | Height Sensitivity | Tilt Sensitivity |
| \$/# 50 | मम्म⊾ */* 50 | ↓ · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | 50 |
| Auto C | ontrol | Fore/ | Aft Tilt |
| 12 12 | | | Ø 3.0 |

Figure 7.284: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

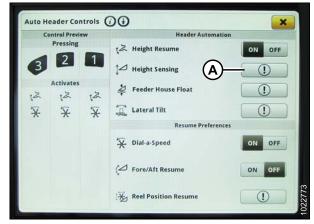


Figure 7.285: John Deere S7 Display – Auto Header Controls

10. Select the AUTO CONTROL icons (A). The AUTO HEADER CONTROLS page opens.

11. If the header has not been calibrated yet, an error icon will appear on the HEIGHT SENSING button (A). Select button (A) to view error message.

- 12. Read error message and then press OK.
- 13. Proceed to Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S7 Series), page 282.



Figure 7.286: John Deere S7 Display – Height Sensing Error Message

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (John Deere S7 Series)

The auto header height sensor output must be within a specific range, or the feature will not work properly.

| Combine | Low Voltage Limit | High Voltage Limit | Minimum Range |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| John Deere S7 Series | 0.5 V | 4.5 V | 3.0 V |

Check the sensor's output voltage range from combine cab according to instructions that follow.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position header 150 mm (6 in.) above ground, and unlock float.

2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If header is not on down stops during next two steps, voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of auto header height control (AHHC) system.

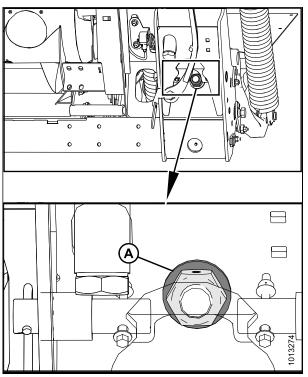


Figure 7.287: Float Lock

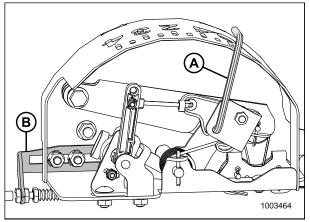


Figure 7.288: Float Indicator Box

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on float indicator is on 0.

- 4. On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of the screen.
- 03:16 × 5F1 2 Harvesting G \odot 8ft Track 1 O Cervus Sa. ~ Set Track 30.000ft E Test E Shift Track Test ▶|4 Oats *0 21 4 ▶| 100% 0.0 0% 0 0 C 1.0 in 0 0 Α 20 0.0 ▲/% bu/ad 0.00 8 \bigcirc O AUTO ٢ ? 1

Figure 7.289: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

Menu 访 B × Machine Settings C Applications Date & Time Diagnostics Display & Sound File Manager System 120 5 බ -Software Manager Users & Access Wireless Data Server Language & Units (A) 0 Wireless Settings 22779

Figure 7.290: John Deere S7 Display – Menu



Figure 7.291: John Deere S7 Display – Diagnostics Center

- 5. On the MENU page, select SYSTEM tab (A). The MENU opens.
- 6. Select DIAGNOSTICS CENTER icon (B). The DIAGNOSTICS CENTER page opens.

7. Select AHC - SENSING (A). The AHC - SENSING DIAGNOSTICS page displays. Select SENSOR tab (A) to view sensor voltages. The center header height sensor voltage (B) must be between 0.5 and 4.5 V, with at least 3 V of variation between 0 and 4 on the float indicator box.

NOTE:

If the optional Auto Lateral Tilt AHHC kit is installed, the left and right header height sensors must also be in the same 0.5–4.5 V range.

9. If sensor voltage adjustment is required, refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page* 162.

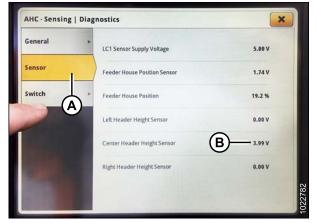


Figure 7.292: John Deere S7 Display – Checking Sensor Voltage

Calibrating Feeder House (John Deere S7 Series)

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration.

For best performance of auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.
- 4. On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of screen. The MENU opens.



Figure 7.293: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

- 5. Select the MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
- 6. Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES page displays.



Figure 7.294: John Deere S7 Display – Machine Settings

| Harvest | Feeder House Lateral Tilt Range Calibration |
|---------|--|
| Header | Feeder House Lateral Tilt Speed Calibration |
| Á | Feeder House Raise Speed Calibration -B |
| | Feeder House Tilt Fore/Aft Range Calibration |
| | Header Calibration |
| | Reel Position Calibration |

Figure 7.295: John Deere S7 Display – Calibrations and Procedures

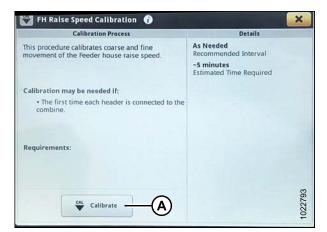


Figure 7.296: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

- 7. Select HEADER tab (A).
- 8. Select FEEDER HOUSE RAISE SPEED CALIBRATION (B). The FH RAISE SPEED CALIBRATION page displays.

9. Select CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom of the page. A calibration overview displays.

10. Read the calibration overview, and then press START.



Figure 7.297: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

| F | H Raise Speed Calib | ration | | |
|------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------|---|
| | Step 1: Engine mus | t be running at high idle | | |
| c | Calibration will proce | eed when engine is running at hig | h idle. | |
| | | | | |
| L. | | | | |
| R | | | | |
| In C | X Cancel | Step 1 of 24 | | |
| | × cancer | 500p 1 01 24 | | J |

Figure 7.298: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

| | Confirm Calibration | |
|--------------|---|--|
| \mathbf{C} | Calibration successful! | |
| | Select "Save" to confirm calibration. Select"Cancel" to discard results. | |
| | | |
| | | |

Figure 7.299: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

11. Follow the instructions on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show next step.

12. When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm calibration.

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

Calibrating Header (John Deere S7 Series)

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration. If feeder house has not yet been calibrated, refer to *Calibrating Feeder House (John Deere S7 Series), page 285.*

For best performance of auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with header at steepest angle. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to Header Angle in the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to combine operator's manual for updates.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
- 3. Place wings in locked position.
- 4. On the HARVESTING page, select the MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of screen. The MENU opens.



Figure 7.300: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

- 5. Select MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
- 6. Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES page displays.



Figure 7.301: John Deere S7 Display – Machine Settings

- 7. Select HEADER tab (A).
- 8. Select HEADER CALIBRATION (B). The HEADER CALIBRATION page displays.

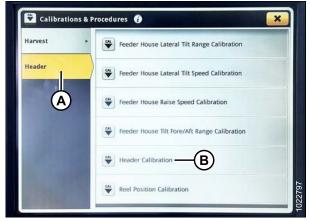


Figure 7.302: John Deere S7 Display – Calibrations and Procedures

| Calibration Process | Details |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| This procedure calibrates coarse and fine movement of the Header. | As Needed Recommended Interval |
| Calibration is done by raising and lowering the Header to set sensor ranges | -5 minutes Estimated Time Required |
| Calibration may be needed if: | |
| Attaching a new or different Header If a header height control sensor or associated components are replaced/adjusted | |
| Requirements: | |
| | |

Figure 7.303: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration



Figure 7.304: John Deere S7 Console

9. Select CALIBRATE (A) at bottom of page. The calibration overview window opens.

10. Press button (A) on console to set engine to high idle.

- 11. Select START on calibration overview page.
- 12. Follow instructions that appear on combine display. As you proceed through calibration process, display will automatically update to show next step.

If an error code appears during calibration, sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.*

13. When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm calibration.



Figure 7.305: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

| | | In the second |
|--------------|--|---------------|
| | Confirm Calibration | |
| \mathbf{i} | Calibration successful! | |
| | Select "Save" to confirm calibration. Select "Cancel" to discard results. | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| X Cano | el | 🗸 Save |
| 0 | AL | 102 |

Figure 7.306: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year)

This section applies only to pre-2015 CR/CX models. For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (New Holland)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.

2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system.

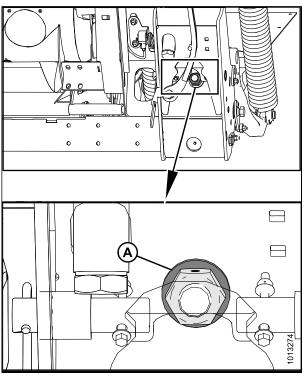


Figure 7.307: Float Lock

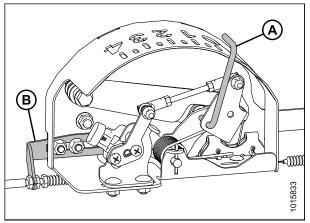


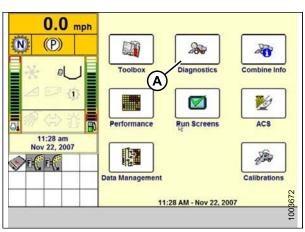
Figure 7.308: Float Indicator Box

3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on the float indicator is on **0**.

- 4. Ensure header float is unlocked.
- 5. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the main screen. The DIAGNOSTICS screen displays.
- 6. Select SETTINGS. The SETTINGS screen displays.

7. Select the GROUP drop-down arrow (A). The GROUP dialog box displays.

8. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A). The PARAMETER screen displays.





| 0.0 mph | | Settings | |
|----------------|----------------------|--------------|--|
| - 0.0 | Group | | |
| N (P) | | V | |
| | Parameter | (A) _ | |
| | | | |
| 200 | Module | SPN | |
| ⊿₽\$ NØ\$\Ť | Schematic IO Name | | |
| 11:29 am | R | | |
| Nov 22, 2007 | Connector and pin | | |
| 百公氏氏 | | | |
| | Electrical component | | |
| | | 2298 2982 | |
| Main Version | CAN Fault Settin | gs Graph GPS | |

Figure 7.310: New Holland Combine Display

| 0.0 mph | | Settings |
|--------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| N P | Group | × |
| | AFS | Header |
| | Brakes | Header HeightTilt |
| 200 | Cleaning | Hydraulic |
| ののなが、 | Engine | Lights |
| 11:30 am Nov 22, 2007 | Feeder | Operator Control |
| Fr SF | Grain Handling | RHM lamp |
| | Ground Drive | Residue |
| Main Version | CAN Fault S | ettings Graph GPS |

Figure 7.311: New Holland Combine Display

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

- 9. Select LEFT HEADER HEIGHT SEN (A), and then select GRAPH button (B). The exact voltage is displayed at the top of the screen.
- 10. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.
- 11. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.*

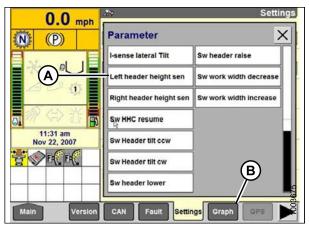


Figure 7.312: New Holland Combine Display

Setting up Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

- 1. Select HEADER LATERAL FLOAT on the combine display, and press ENTER.
- 2. Use the up and down navigation keys to move between options, and select INSTALLED.

| Ö | 1 | 20.0 km/h | v 🔻 |
|---------|----|---|---------|
| | | eder threshold press. | Î |
| 2:00 L1 | | inum reel speed | |
| | | so reelspeed slope | |
| | | ader lateral float Installed ader AutoFloat | |
| . 07 | | Installed ader type | |
| 2 | | Corn Header Graulic reel drive | |
| ୖ | | lot installed | |
| - | He | ader lateral float | 1003581 |

Figure 7.313: New Holland Combine Display

- 3. Select HEADER AUTOFLOAT, and press ENTER.
- 4. Use the up and down navigation keys to move between options, and select INSTALLED.

| Q | 1 2 0. 0 km/h | 5 |
|----------------|--|---------|
| | Minimum reel speed 10 /min Auto reelspeed slope 480 Header lateral float Installed Header AutoFloat Installed | |
| 4 0 13 0 | Header type Grain header Hydraulic reel drive Not installed Max. stubble height 199 | |
| Alternite | Header AutoFloat | 1003582 |

Figure 7.314: New Holland Combine Display

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

Check the following conditions before starting the header calibration procedure:

- The header is attached to the combine.
- The combine is on level ground, with the header level to the ground.
- The header is on down stops, and the center-link is set to D.
- The engine is running.
- The combine is not moving.
- No faults have been received from the Header Height Controller (HHC) module.
- Header/feeder is disengaged.
- Lateral float buttons are **NOT** pressed.
- ESC key is **NOT** pressed.

To calibrate the AHHC, follow these steps:

- 1. Select CALIBRATION on the combine display, and press the RIGHT ARROW navigation key to enter the information box.
- 2. Select HEADER (A), and press ENTER. The CALIBRATION dialog box opens.

You can use the up and down navigation keys to move between options.

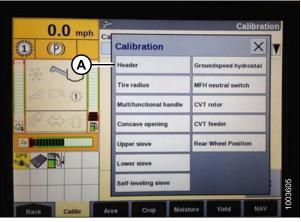


Figure 7.315: New Holland Combine Display

3. Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear in the dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.



Figure 7.316: New Holland Combine Display

4. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION SUCCESSFUL message is displayed on the screen. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER or ESC key.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

5. If the unit does not function properly, conduct the maximum stubble height calibration.

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

Calibrating Maximum Stubble Height

This procedure describes how to calibrate the area counter to stop or start counting at the correct height. Program the header to a height that will never be reached while cutting. The area counter will stop counting when the header is above the programmed height, and will begin counting when the header is below the programmed height.

Select the height of the header that corresponds to the description above.

IMPORTANT:

- If the value is set too low, area may NOT be counted since the header is sometimes raised above this threshold although the combine is still cutting.
- If the value is set too high, the area counter will keep counting even when the header is raised (but below this threshold) and the combine is no longer cutting crop.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Select the MAXIMUM STUBBLE HEIGHT calibration dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

| Maximum Stubble Height | |
|---|---------|
| * Set header to desired maximum stubble | height |
| * Then press ENTER | |
| ENTER = Continue ESC = Exit | |
| | 1003774 |

Figure 7.317: New Holland Calibration Dialog Box

| * | Cal | ibration | successful | |
|----|------|----------|------------|--|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| Pr | ress | ESC or | ENTER | |

Figure 7.318: New Holland Calibration Dialog Box

2. Move header to the correct position using the header up or down control switch on the multifunction handle.

- 3. Press ENTER to continue. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.
- 4. Press ENTER or ESC to close the calibration screen. The calibration is now complete.

Adjusting Header Raise Rate (New Holland CR/CX Series)

If necessary, the header raise rate (the first speed on the HEADER HEIGHT rocker switch of the multifunctional handle) can be adjusted.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

- 1. Select HEADER RAISE RATE on the combine display.
- 2. Use the + or buttons to change the setting.
- 3. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

NOTE:

The raise rate can be changed from 32–236 in steps of 34. The factory setting is 100.

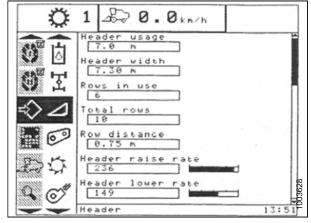


Figure 7.319: New Holland Combine Display

Setting the Header Lower Rate (New Holland CR/CX Series)

If necessary, the header lower rate (the automatic header height control button or second speed on the header height rocker switch of the multi-function handle) can be adjusted.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

- 1. Select HEADER LOWER RATE on the combine display.
- 2. Use the + or buttons to change the setting to 50.
- 3. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

NOTE:

The lower rate can be changed from 2–247 in steps of 7. It is factory-set to 100.

| Ö | 1 2 0. 0 km/h | |
|--------------------|---|-------|
| | Header usage 7.0 m Header width 7.30 m Rous in use 6 | Ê |
| $\Rightarrow \Box$ | Total rows | |
| 00 | Row distance 0.75 m | |
| なる | Header raise rate | |
| Q 🔊 | Header lower rate | 13:51 |
| | neader | 13:51 |

Figure 7.320: New Holland Combine Display

Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR/CX Series)

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Engage threshing and feeder house.
- 2. Select HEIGHT SENSITIVITY on the combine display screen.
- 3. Use the + or buttons to change the setting to 200.
- 4. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

The sensitivity can be changed from 10–250 in steps of 10. It is factory-set to 100.

| Q | 1 🕹 | >0. | 5. | n∕h | | |
|-----|----------------|------------------------|-------|-------|-----|---------|
| | Reel (Inst | fore-b alled | ack | | | |
| | | cal kn instal | | | | |
| | | vertic instal | | sitio | on | |
| ⇒⊘⊿ | Reel | norizo | ntal | posit | ion | |
| | Reel : | instal speed | | r | | |
| | Inst: Heigh | alled 5 sens | ibivi | દવ | | |
| | 100 | sensit | | | 5 | |
| C 2 | 100 | | | | | |
| | Heigh | t sens | itivi | ty | | 1003627 |

Figure 7.321: New Holland Combine Display

Setting Preset Cutting Height (New Holland CR/CX Series)

To set the preset cutting height, follow these steps:

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to 7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later), page 300.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header (152 mm [6 in.]) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. Refer to Step *4, page 159*. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

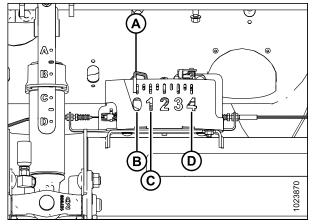


Figure 7.322: Float Indicator Box

- 1. Engage the threshing mechanism and the feeder with switches (A) and (B).
- 2. Set HEADER MEMORY rocker switch (D) in STUBBLE HEIGHT/AUTOFLOAT mode position (A) or (B).
- 3. Lower the header to the desired cutting height using the HEADER HEIGHT and HEADER LATERAL FLOAT momentary switch (C).
- Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the height position. A beep will confirm the setting.

It is possible to store two different header height values by using HEADER MEMORY rocker switch (D) in STUBBLE HEIGHT/AUTOFLOAT mode position (A) or (B).

5. To change one of the memorized header height set points while the combine is in use, use the HEADER HEIGHT AND HEADER LATERAL FLOAT rocker switch (C) (slow up/down) to raise or lower header to the desired value. Lightly press the AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the new height position. A beep will confirm setting.

NOTE:

Fully pressing AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E), will disengage float mode.

NOTE:

It is not necessary to press rocker switch (D) again after changing header height set point.

7.1.16 New Holland Combines (CR Series—Model Year 2015 and Later)

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combines models, refer to 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290.

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab (New Holland CR Series)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combines models, refer to 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

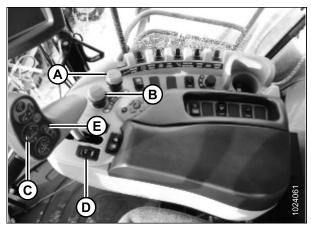


Figure 7.323: New Holland Combine Controls

- 1. Position the header 150 mm (6 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- 2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

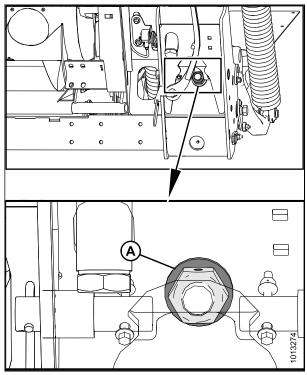


Figure 7.324: Float Lock

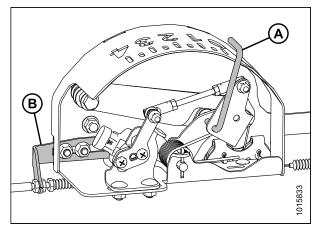


Figure 7.325: Float Indicator Box

- 3. Adjust cable take-up bracket (B) (if necessary) until pointer (A) on the float indicator is on **0**.
- 4. Ensure header float is unlocked.

5. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the main screen. The DIAGNOSTICS screen displays.



Figure 7.326: New Holland Combine Display

| A | 1 | Settings |
|-------------------|-------------------|--|
| WV U | Group | and the second s |
| - | | V |
| * | Parameter | |
| | 0 | V |
| 006 | 2.0 Module | SPN |
| 0% | Schematic IO Nan | e |
| | Connector and pi | |
| 9:29 am - Jan 13, | 2016 | |
| | Electrical compor | ent A |
| 6 | | |
| Back | ersion CAN Fault | Settings Graph Res |
| Back | CAN Fault | Settings Graph Res |

Figure 7.327: New Holland Combine Display

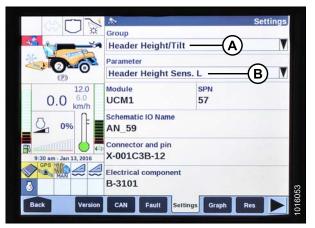


Figure 7.328: New Holland Combine Display

6. Select SETTINGS (A). The SETTINGS screen displays.

- 7. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A) from the GROUP drop-down menu.
- 8. Select HEADER HEIGHT SENS. L (B) from the PARAMETER drop-down menu.

- 9. Select GRAPH (A). The exact voltage (B) is displayed at the top of the screen.
- 10. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.
- 11. If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. Refer to *Adjusting Voltage Limits: One-Sensor System, page 162.*

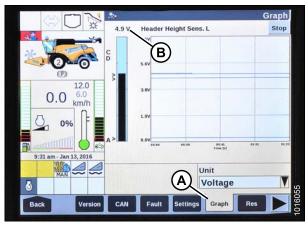


Figure 7.329: New Holland Combine Display

Setting up Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combines models, refer to 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290.

- 1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- 2. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the main screen. The TOOLBOX screen displays.

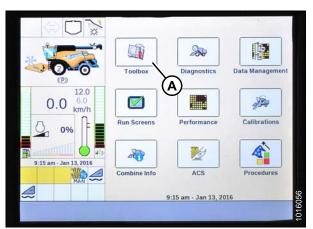


Figure 7.330: New Holland Combine Display

3. Simultaneously press both the UNLOAD (A) and RESUME (B) buttons on the control handle.

NOTE:

Software in some New Holland combines may not allow you to change the header from FLEX to PLATFORM or the header type from DEFAULT to 80/90 at the main menu. This is now a dealer setting, and requires you to access the DEALER SETTING screen by pressing and holding both the UNLOAD and RESUME buttons on the control handle for approximately 10 seconds. The DEALER SETTING screen should appear and will allow you to change the header and header type settings.

- 4. Select HEAD 1 (A). The HEADER SETUP 1 screen displays.
- 5. Select the CUTTING TYPE drop-down arrow (B) and change the CUTTING TYPE to PLATFORM (C).

6. Select the HEADER SUB TYPE drop-down arrow (A). The HEADER SUB TYPE dialog box displays.



Figure 7.331: New Holland Combine Controls



Figure 7.332: New Holland Combine Display

| | Mi | Header S | etup 1 |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------|--------|
| | Header Type | | |
| | Draper/Varifeed | | V |
| | Header Sub Type | | |
| | No shift function | | Y |
| 12.0 | Cutting Type | a | |
| 0.0 ^{6.0} km/h | Platform | 0 | V |
| L L | Frame Type | | |
| <u> </u> | Flex Header | | V |
| | Header Width | | |
| 9:18 am - Jan 13, 2016 | 4.00 m | | |
| | Target Work Width | | |
| 6 | ▼ 4.00 m | | |
| Back Electr | Drive Head 1 Head 2 | Feeder Thresh | 016059 |
| Electr | nead 1 Head 2 | Thresh | Į Z Q |

Figure 7.333: New Holland Combine Display

7. Set HEADER SUB TYPE to 80/90 (A) for a New Holland combine.



Figure 7.334: New Holland Combine Display



Figure 7.335: New Holland Combine Display

| | Header Setup 2 |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| | Autofloat Installed A |
| | Height/Tilt Response Normal |
| 0.0 ^{12.0} _{6.0} _{km/h} | Pressure Override Threshold 20.0 bar |
| 0% F | Auto Header Lift Installed B |
| 9:23 am - Jan 13, 2016 | Manual HHC Raise Rate |
| | Manual HHC Lower Rate |
| Back Electr | Drive Head 1 Head 2 Feeder Thresh |

Figure 7.336: New Holland Combine Display

8. Select HEAD 2 (A). The HEADER SETUP 2 screen displays.

- 9. Select the AUTOFLOAT drop-down arrow and set AUTOFLOAT to INSTALLED (A).
- 10. Select the AUTO HEADER LIFT drop-down arrow and set AUTO HEADER LIFT to INSTALLED (B).

NOTE:

With AUTO HEADER LIFT installed and AHHC engaged, the header will lift up automatically when you pull back on the control handle.

11. Set the values for MANUAL HHC RAISE RATE (C) and MANUAL HHC LOWER RATE (D) for best performance according to ground conditions.

12. Set the values for HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY (A) and HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) for best performance according to ground conditions.

13. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES.



Figure 7.337: New Holland Combine Display

| | Header Setup 2 | |
|----------------------|---|---------|
| Reel Fore-Aft | Header Settip 2 | |
| Yes | V | |
| Reel height sensor | | |
| Yes | V | |
| Reel distance sensor | | |
| No | V | |
| Vertical knives | A State of the second se | |
| No | V | |
| Header Lateral Tilt | | |
| Yes | | _ |
| Autotilt | | 1023920 |
| No | V | 102 |

Figure 7.338: New Holland Combine Display

Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control (New Holland CR Series)

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

Check the following conditions before starting the header calibration procedure:

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

- The header is attached to the combine.
- The combine is on level ground, with the header level to the ground.
- The header is on down stops, and the center-link is set to D.
- The engine is running.
- The combine is not moving.
- No faults have been received from the header height controller (HHC) module.
- Header/feeder is disengaged.
- Lateral float buttons are **NOT** pressed.
- ESC key is **NOT** pressed.

To calibrate the AHHC, follow these steps:

1. Select CALIBRATIONS (A) on the main screen. The CALIBRATION screen displays.

2. Select the CALIBRATION drop-down arrow (A).



Figure 7.339: New Holland Combine Display



Figure 7.340: New Holland Combine Display

3. Select HEADER (A) from the list of calibration options.



Figure 7.341: New Holland Combine Display

Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

4.

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.

5. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION COMPLETED message is displayed on the screen.

NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 7.342: New Holland Combine Display

| | * | | | С | alibration | |
|-------------------------|----------|-------------|------------------|-------|-------------|---------|
| ANO X | Calibrat | Calibration | | | | |
| | Heade | r | | | V | |
| * | Pulse H | | | | | |
| | | /4 | | | | |
| 12.0 | Determi | | 10% and uppe | er | | |
| 0.0 ^{6.0} km/h | 10% of | | sors travel, lif | | | |
| 3 15% | pressure | difference | and tilt sense | or: | | |
| | polarity | | | | | |
| | Calibrat | ion comple | ted. | | and William | |
| 10:06 am - Jan 13, 2016 | | | | | | |
| Man O | - | | | | 1.2 | |
| | | | | | | 112 |
| Back Calibr | Area | Crop | Moisture | Yield | NAV | 1016112 |
| | | | A | | | |

Figure 7.343: New Holland Combine Display

Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages (New Holland)

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. On the main page of the combine display, select DIAGNOSTICS (A). The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.



Figure 7.344: New Holland Combine Display

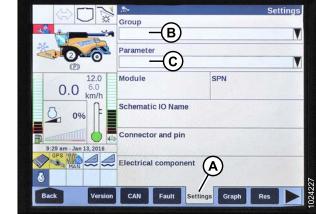


Figure 7.345: New Holland Combine Display

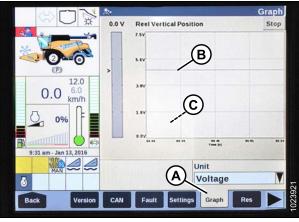


Figure 7.346: New Holland Combine Display

- 2. Select SETTINGS tab (A). The SETTINGS page opens.
- 3. From the GROUP menu (B), select HEADER.
- 4. From the PARAMETER menu (C), select REEL VERTICAL POSITION.

- 5. Select GRAPH tab (A). The REEL VERTICAL POSITION graph displays.
- 6. Lower the reel to view the high voltage (B). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
- 7. Raise the reel to view the low voltage (C). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.
- 8. If either voltage is out of range, refer to 8.1 Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor, page 315.

Setting Preset Cutting Height (New Holland CR Series – 2015 and Later)

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290.

The console has two buttons used for auto height presets. The toggle switch that was present on previous models is now configured as shown at right. MacDon headers only require the first two buttons (A) and (B). The third button (C) is not configured.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

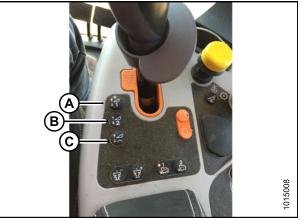


Figure 7.347: New Holland Combine Controls

To set preset cutting height, follow these steps:

- 1. Engage separator and header.
- 2. Select preset button 1 (A). A yellow light on the button will illuminate.
- 3. Raise or lower the header to desired cutting height.



Figure 7.348: New Holland Combine Controls

4. Hold RESUME button (C) on multifunction handle to set the preset.

NOTE:

When setting presets, always set header position before setting reel position. If header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not save.

- 5. Raise or lower the reel to desired position.
- 6. Hold RESUME button (C) on multifunction handle to set the preset.
- 7. Repeat Step *2, page 310* to Step *6, page 311*, using preset button 2.
- 8. Lower header to the ground.
- 9. Select RUN SCREENS (A) on the main screen.



Figure 7.349: New Holland Combine Multifunction Handle

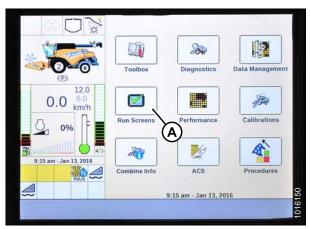


Figure 7.350: New Holland Combine Display



Figure 7.351: New Holland Combine Display

10. Select the RUN tab that shows MANUAL HEIGHT.

NOTE:

The MANUAL HEIGHT field may appear on any of the RUN tabs. When an auto height preset button is pressed, the display will change to AUTO HEIGHT (A).

11. Press one of the auto height preset buttons to select a preset cutting height.

SETTING UP AUTO HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL

Setting Maximum Work Height (New Holland CR Series)

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combines models, refer to 7.1.15 New Holland Combines (CR/CX Series—Pre-2015 Model Year), page 290.

1. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the main screen. The TOOLBOX screen displays.

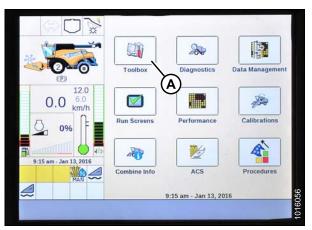


Figure 7.352: New Holland Combine Display

- 2. Select FEEDER (A). The FEEDER SETUP screen displays.
- 3. Select the MAXIMUM WORK HEIGHT field (B).

- 4. Set MAXIMUM WORK HEIGHT to desired value.
- 5. Press SET and then press ENTER.

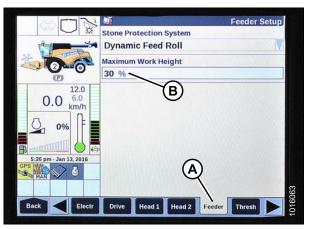


Figure 7.353: New Holland Combine Display



Figure 7.354: New Holland Combine Display

Configuring Reel Fore-Aft, Header Tilt, and Header Type (New Holland CR Series)

This procedure applies only to 2016 New Holland CR models 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, and 9.90.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Simultaneously press the UNLOAD (A) and RESUME (B) buttons on the control handle.



Figure 7.355: New Holland Combine Controls

 Header Setup 1

 Header Type

 Draper/Varifeed

 Header Sub Type

 No shift function

 Cutting Type

 Platform

 Frame Type

 Rigid

 Header Width

 13.1 ft

 Target Work Width

 13.1 ft

 Bigt

 Draget

 Head 1

 Head 2

 Freeter

Figure 7.356: New Holland Combine Display



Figure 7.357: New Holland Combine Display

2. On the HEAD 1 screen, change the CUTTING TYPE from FLEX to PLATFORM as shown at location (A).

3. On the HEAD 2 screen, change HEADER SUB TYPE from DEFAULT to 80/90 as shown at location (A).

There are now two different buttons for ON GROUND presets. The toggle switch that was present on previous models is now configured as shown at right. MacDon headers only require the first two buttons (A) and (B). The third button down (C) is not configured.

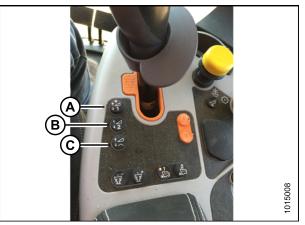


Figure 7.358: New Holland Combine Controls

Chapter 8: Setting up Reel Height Sensor

8.1 Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor

The output voltage range of the auto reel height sensor can be checked from inside the combine or manually at the sensor. For in-cab instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.



To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure minimum reel height is properly set before adjusting reel height sensor. For instructions, refer to 6.12 *Measuring and Adjusting Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 131*.

IMPORTANT:

To measure the output voltage of the reel height sensor, the combine engine needs to be running and supplying power to the sensor. Always engage the combine parking brake and stay away from the reel.

Table 8.1 Reel Height Sensor Voltage Limits

| Combine Type | Voltage | Range |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|
| | X Voltage | Y Voltage |
| Case/New Holland | 0.5–0.9 V | 4.1–4.5 V |
| CLAAS | 4.1–4.5 V | 0.5–0.9 V |
| John Deere | 4.1–4.5 V | 0.5–0.9 V |

NOTE:

For CLAAS combines: To avoid a collision of the reel with the cab, the machine is equipped with an automatic reel height limitation. Some CLAAS combines have an automatic shutoff feature that engages when the automatic reel height limitation is reached. When raising the header by more than 80 percent, the reel is automatically lowered. The automatic lowering of the reel can be manually overridden, and a warning will appear on the CEBIS terminal.

To check the voltage range manually, follow these steps:

- 1. Engage the combine parking brake.
- 2. Start the engine and fully lower the reel.

- 3. Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure voltage range **Y**. Refer to Table *8.1, page 315* for range requirements.
- 4. If using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (Pin 2 wire) and the signal (Pin 3 wire) at the reel height sensor (B).
- 5. Stop the engine and remove key.
- 6. Adjust length of threaded rod (A) to modify voltage range **Y**.
- 7. Repeat checking and adjusting until voltage range **Y** is within the range specified.
- 8. Start the engine, and fully raise the reel.
- Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually), to measure voltage range X. Refer to Table 8.1, page 315 for range requirements.
- 10. If using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (Pin 2 wire) and the signal (Pin 3 wire) at the reel height sensor (A).
- 11. Stop the engine and remove the key.
- 12. Loosen two M5 hex nuts (B) and rotate sensor (A) to achieve voltage range **X**.
- 13. Repeat checking and adjusting until voltage range **X** is within the range specified.
- 14. Start the engine and fully lower the reel.
- 15. Recheck voltage range **Y** and ensure it is still within the range specified. Adjust if required.

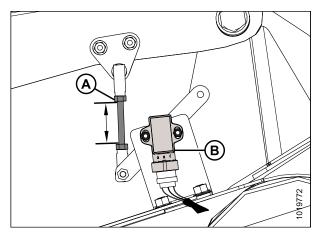


Figure 8.1: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm (Reel Down)

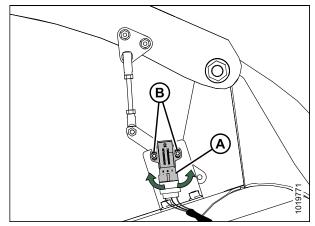


Figure 8.2: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm (Reel Up)

Chapter 9: Running up Header

To run up the header, follow these steps:

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- 1. Start combine, raise header fully, and engage safety props.
- 2. Stop engine and remove key.
- 3. Lower plastic pan under float module and check for shipping materials/debris that may have fallen under float module draper.
- 4. Rotate latches (A) to unlock handles (B).
- 5. Hold pan (C) and rotate handles (B) to release pan. Lower pan to expose draper.

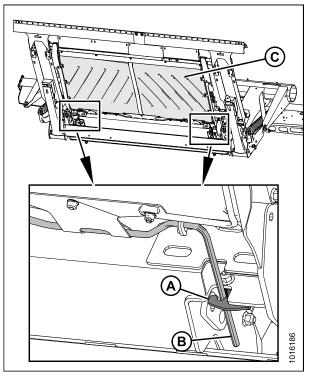


Figure 9.1: Float Module Plastic Pan

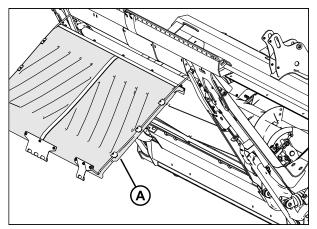


Figure 9.2: Float Module Plastic Pan

6. Check and remove debris from pan (A) and draper.

RUNNING UP HEADER

7. Raise pan and rotate handle (A) so that rod engages clips (B) on pan.

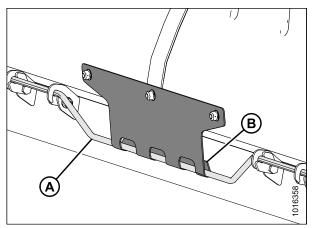


Figure 9.3: Clips Engaged

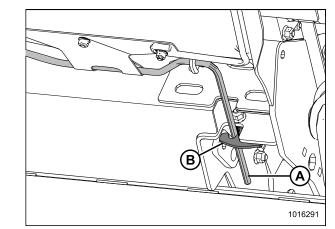


Figure 9.4: Latches Secured

- 8. Push handle (A) into slot and secure it with latches (B).
- 9. Open left endshield.

- 10. Ensure flow control (A) is set to position 6.
- 11. Ensure feeder house variable speed is set to MINIMUM.

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

12. Start combine and run the machine slowly for 5 minutes while watching and listening **FROM THE OPERATOR'S SEAT** for binding or interfering parts.

NOTE:

Reel and side drapers will not operate until oil flow fills the lines.

- 13. Run the machine at operating speed for 15 minutes. Listen for any unusual sounds or abnormal vibration.
- 14. Perform run-up check as listed on *Predelivery Checklist, page 339* (yellow sheet attached to this instruction) to ensure the machine is field-ready.

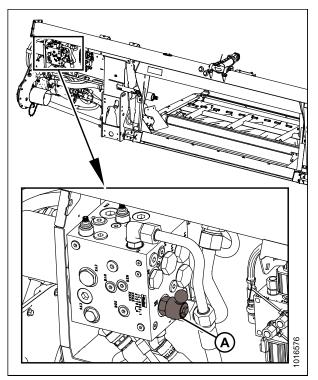


Figure 9.5: Flow Control

9.1 Performing Post Run-Up Adjustments

Stop engine and perform post run-up check as listed on the Predelivery Checklist (yellow sheet attached to this instruction *Predelivery Checklist, page 339*) to ensure machine is field-ready.

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before making adjustments to machine.

Some adjustments may be necessary after the run-up. Refer to the following:

- 9.1.1 Adjusting Knife, page 320
- 9.1.2 Adjusting Knife Speed, page 321

9.1.1 Adjusting Knife

WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before making adjustments to machine.

- 1. Stop engine and remove the key.
- 2. Check guards for signs of heating during run-up due to insufficient clearance between guard and knife.
- If heating is evident, check gap between knifehead (A) and pitman arm (B). A business card should slide easily through the gap. If not, adjust gap by loosening bolt and tapping knifehead (A) with a hammer. Retighten bolt.

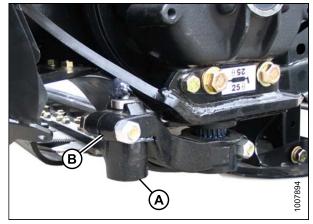


Figure 9.6: Knifehead and Pitman Arm

Figure 9.7: Straightening Tool – Upward Adjustment

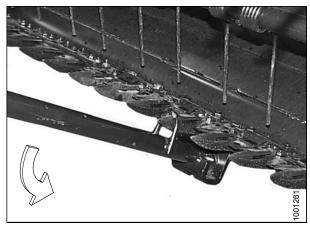


Figure 9.8: Straightening Tool – Downward Adjustment

4. Adjust guard alignment as necessary using guard straightening tool (MD #140135). Adjust guard tips upwards by positioning tool as shown, and pulling up.

5. Adjust guard tips downward by positioning tool as shown, and pushing down.

9.1.2 Adjusting Knife Speed

The header knife drive is driven by the hydraulic pump mounted on the float module. The following speeds are factory-set for the combine feeder house:

- AGCO: 625 rpm (includes Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson)
- Case: 580 rpm
- John Deere: 490 rpm
- CLAAS: 750 rpm (420 on combine display)
- New Holland: 580 rpm



To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key from ignition before leaving operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

This is the **MINIMUM** speed setting for variable speed feeder houses. To avoid damage to the header, do **NOT** operate at speeds higher than the minimum speed settings.

- 1. Stop combine engine and remove key.
- 2. Push release lever (A) located on the backside of the endshield to unlock the shield.
- 3. Pull endshield open using handle depression (B).

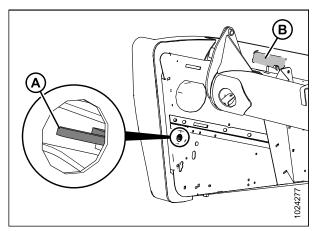


Figure 9.9: Endshield Latch Access

Totol

Figure 9.10: Left Endshield

 Pull endshield at handle depression (A). Endshield is retained by a hinge tab (B) and will open in direction (C).

- 5. Pull the endshield free of hinge tab (A) if additional clearance is required, and swing shield towards the rear of the header.
- 6. Engage safety catch (B) on hinge arm to secure the shield in fully-open position.

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

- 7. Start engine, engage header drive, and run combine at operating rpm.
- 8. Check the rpm of knife drive box pulley (A) using a handheld tachometer.
- 9. Stop engine, remove key, and close endshield.

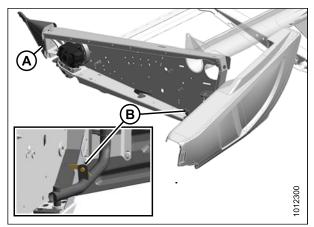


Figure 9.11: Left Endshield



Figure 9.12: Knife Drive Box

10. Compare actual pulley rpm with values in the following chart:

Table 9.1 Recommended Knife Drive Speed (rpm)

| Header Size | Recommended Knife Drive Speed Range (rpm) | | |
|-----------------|---|--------------|--|
| | Single Knife | Double Knife | |
| 9.1 m (30 ft.) | 550–650 | — | |
| 10.7 m (35 ft.) | 550–600 | — | |
| 12.2 m (40 ft.) | 525–600 | 550–650 | |
| 13.7 m (45 ft.) | N/A | | |

11. If adjustment to knife drive box pulley rpm is necessary, refer to the header technical manual.

9.1.3 Adjusting Feed Draper Tension

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

- 1. Raise the header to its full height, stop the engine, and remove key from the ignition.
- 2. Engage the header safety props.
- 3. Ensure the draper guide (rubber track on the underside of the draper) is properly engaged in the groove on the drive roller and the idler roller is between the guides.

NOTE:

The default position of spring retainer (white indicator) is the center of the spring box window (A); however, the position of the spring retainer varies with draper tracking adjustment at the factory.

- 4. Check the position of white indicator (A). If feed draper tracks properly and spring retainers on both sides are positioned within the following dimensions, than no adjustment is necessary:
 - Loosened to 3 mm (1/8 in.) (B) (aft of center in indicator window [A])
 - Tightened to 6 mm (1/4 in.) (C) (forward of center in indicator window [A])

NOTE:

Left side of float module shown. Right side is opposite.

- 5. If adjustment is necessary, proceed to Step *6, page* 323.
- To adjust feed draper tension, loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) clockwise to increase draper tension or counterclockwise to decrease draper tension.
- 7. Adjust the draper tension until the white indicator (C) is within the range described in Step *4, page 323*.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid uneven draper tracking, adjust both sides equally.

8. Tighten jam nut (A).

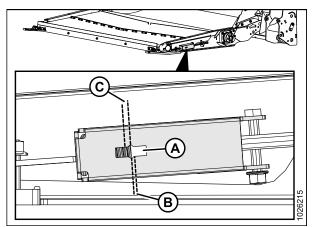


Figure 9.13: Feed Draper Tensioner

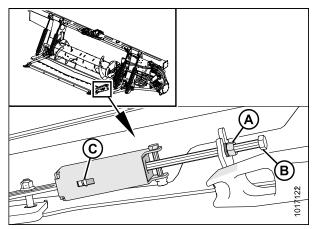


Figure 9.14: Feed Draper Tensioner

Chapter 10: Reference

10.1 Torque Specifications

The following tables provide correct torque values for various bolts, cap screws, and hydraulic fittings.

- Tighten all bolts to torque values specified in charts (unless otherwise noted throughout this manual).
- Replace hardware with same strength and grade of bolt.
- Use torque value tables as a guide and periodically check tightness of bolts.
- Understand torque categories for bolts and cap screws by using their identifying head markings.

Jam nuts

When applying torque to finished jam nuts, multiply the torque applied to regular nuts by f=0.65.

Self-tapping screws

Standard torque is to be used (NOT to be used on critical or structurally important joints).

10.1.1 Metric Bolt Specifications

| Table 10.1 Metric Class 8.8 Bolts and Class 9 Free | |
|--|--|
| Spinning Nut | |

| Nominal Size (A) | Torque (Nm) | | Torque (Ibf·ft) (*Ibf·in) | |
|---------------------|-------------|------|------------------------------|------|
| Size (A) | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. |
| 3-0.5 | 1.4 | 1.6 | *13 | *14 |
| 3.5-0.6 | 2.2 | 2.5 | *20 | *22 |
| 4-0.7 | 3.3 | 3.7 | *29 | *32 |
| 5-0.8 | 6.7 | 7.4 | *59 | *66 |
| 6-1.0 | 11.4 | 12.6 | *101 | *112 |
| 8-1.25 | 28 | 30 | 20 | 23 |
| 10-1.5 | 55 | 60 | 40 | 45 |
| 12-1.75 | 95 | 105 | 70 | 78 |
| 14-2.0 | 152 | 168 | 113 | 124 |
| 16-2.0 | 236 | 261 | 175 | 193 |
| 20-2.5 | 460 | 509 | 341 | 377 |
| 24-3.0 | 796 | 879 | 589 | 651 |

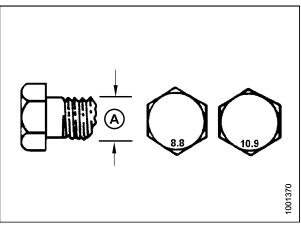


Figure 10.1: Bolt Grades

| Nominal | Torque (Nm) | | Torque (lbf·ft) (*lbf·in) | |
|----------|-------------|------|------------------------------|------|
| Size (A) | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. |
| 3-0.5 | 1 | 1.1 | *9 | *10 |
| 3.5-0.6 | 1.5 | 1.7 | *14 | *15 |
| 4-0.7 | 2.3 | 2.5 | *20 | *22 |
| 5-0.8 | 4.5 | 5 | *40 | *45 |
| 6-1.0 | 7.7 | 8.6 | *69 | *76 |
| 8-1.25 | 18.8 | 20.8 | *167 | *185 |
| 10-1.5 | 37 | 41 | 28 | 30 |
| 12-1.75 | 65 | 72 | 48 | 53 |
| 14-2.0 | 104 | 115 | 77 | 85 |
| 16-2.0 | 161 | 178 | 119 | 132 |
| 20-2.5 | 314 | 347 | 233 | 257 |
| 24-3.0 | 543 | 600 | 402 | 444 |

Table 10.2 Metric Class 8.8 Bolts and Class 9 Distorted Thread Nut

Table 10.3 Metric Class 10.9 Bolts and Class 10 Free Spinning Nut

| Nominal | Torque (Nm) | | Torque (lbf·ft) (*lbf·in) | |
|----------|-------------|------|------------------------------|------|
| Size (A) | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. |
| 3-0.5 | 1.8 | 2 | *18 | *19 |
| 3.5-0.6 | 2.8 | 3.1 | *27 | *30 |
| 4-0.7 | 4.2 | 4.6 | *41 | *45 |
| 5-0.8 | 8.4 | 9.3 | *82 | *91 |
| 6-1.0 | 14.3 | 15.8 | *140 | *154 |
| 8-1.25 | 38 | 42 | 28 | 31 |
| 10-1.5 | 75 | 83 | 56 | 62 |
| 12-1.75 | 132 | 145 | 97 | 108 |
| 14-2.0 | 210 | 232 | 156 | 172 |
| 16-2.0 | 326 | 360 | 242 | 267 |
| 20-2.5 | 637 | 704 | 472 | 521 |
| 24-3.0 | 1101 | 1217 | 815 | 901 |

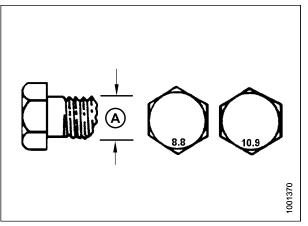


Figure 10.2: Bolt Grades

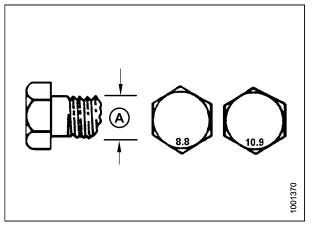
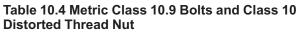


Figure 10.3: Bolt Grades

| Nominal | Torque (Nm) | | Torque (lbf·ft) (*lbf∙in) | |
|----------|-------------|------|------------------------------|------|
| Size (A) | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. |
| 3-0.5 | 1.3 | 1.5 | *12 | *13 |
| 3.5-0.6 | 2.1 | 2.3 | *19 | *21 |
| 4-0.7 | 3.1 | 3.4 | *28 | *31 |
| 5-0.8 | 6.3 | 7 | *56 | *62 |
| 6-1.0 | 10.7 | 11.8 | *95 | *105 |
| 8-1.25 | 26 | 29 | 19 | 21 |
| 10-1.5 | 51 | 57 | 38 | 42 |
| 12-1.75 | 90 | 99 | 66 | 73 |
| 14-2.0 | 143 | 158 | 106 | 117 |
| 16-2.0 | 222 | 246 | 165 | 182 |
| 20-2.5 | 434 | 480 | 322 | 356 |
| 24-3.0 | 750 | 829 | 556 | 614 |



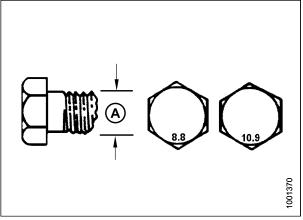


Figure 10.4: Bolt Grades

10.1.2 Metric Bolt Specifications Bolting into Cast Aluminum

| Table 1 | 0 5 Metric | Bolt Bolting i | nto Cast | Aluminum |
|---------|------------|----------------|----------|----------|
| | | Don Doning i | nto oast | Alumnum |

| | Bolt Torque | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|--------|-------------------------|--------|--|
| Nominal Size (A) | 8.8 (Cast Aluminum) | | 10.9 (Cast Aluminum) | | |
| | Nm | lbf∙ft | Nm | lbf∙ft | |
| M3 | _ | _ | _ | 1 | |
| M4 | _ | - | 4 | 2.6 | |
| M5 | - | - | 8 | 5.5 | |
| M6 | 9 | 6 | 12 | 9 | |
| M8 | 20 | 14 | 28 | 20 | |
| M10 | 40 | 28 | 55 | 40 | |
| M12 | 70 | 52 | 100 | 73 | |
| M14 | _ | _ | _ | _ | |
| M16 | _ | _ | _ | _ | |

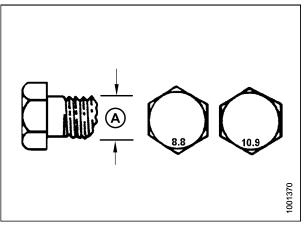


Figure 10.5: Bolt Grades

10.1.3 Flare-Type Hydraulic Fittings

- 1. Check flare (A) and flare seat (B) for defects that might cause leakage.
- 2. Align tube (C) with fitting (D) and thread nut (E) onto fitting without lubrication until contact has been made between flared surfaces.
- 3. Torque fitting nut (E) to specified number of flats from finger tight (FFFT) or to a given torque value in Table *10.6, page 328*.
- Use two wrenches to prevent fitting (D) from rotating. Place one wrench on fitting body (D), and tighten nut (E) with other wrench to torque shown.
- 5. Assess final condition of connection.

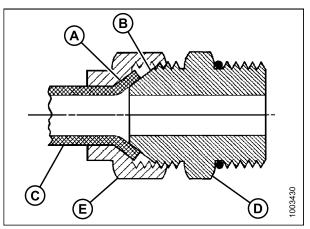


Figure 10.6: Hydraulic Fitting

| | | Torque Value ⁷ | | Flats from Fing | Jer Tight (FFFT) |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------------------|---------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| SAE Dash Size | Thread Size (in.) | Nm | lbf·ft | Tube | Swivel Nut or Hose |
| -2 | 5/16–24 | 4–5 | 3–4 | — | — |
| -3 | 3/8–24 | 7–8 | 5–6 | — | — |
| -4 | 7/16–20 | 18–19 | 13–14 | 2-1/2 | 2 |
| -5 | 1/2–20 | 19–21 | 14–15 | 2 | 2 |
| -6 | 9/16–18 | 30–33 | 22–24 | 2 | 1-1/2 |
| -8 | 3/4–16 | 57–63 | 42–46 | 2 | 1-1/2 |
| -10 | 7/8–14 | 81–89 | 60–66 | 1-1/2 | 1-1/2 |
| -12 | 1-1/16–12 | 113–124 | 83–91 | 1-1/2 | 1-1/4 |
| -14 | 1-3/16–12 | 136–149 | 100–110 | 1-1/2 | 1-1/4 |
| -16 | 1-5/16–12 | 160–176 | 118–130 | 1-1/2 | 1 |
| -20 | 1-5/8–12 | 228–250 | 168–184 | 1 | 1 |
| -24 | 1-7/8–12 | 264–291 | 195–215 | 1 | 1 |
| -32 | 2-1/2–12 | 359–395 | 265–291 | 1 | 1 |
| -40 | 3–12 | | | 1 | 1 |

Table 10.6 Flare-Type Hydraulic Tube Fittings

^{7.} Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

10.1.4 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable)

- 1. Inspect O-ring (A) and seat (B) for dirt or obvious defects.
- 2. Back off lock nut (C) as far as possible. Ensure that washer (D) is loose and is pushed toward lock nut (C) as far as possible.
- 3. Check that O-ring (A) is **NOT** on threads and adjust if necessary.
- 4. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring (A).

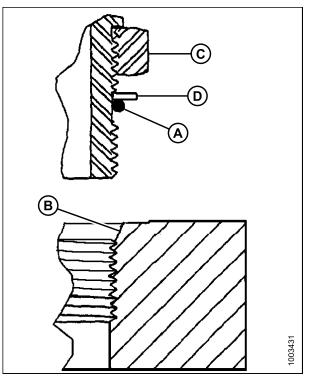


Figure 10.7: Hydraulic Fitting

- 5. Install fitting (B) into port until back up washer (D) and O-ring (A) contact part face (E).
- 6. Position angle fittings by unscrewing no more than one turn.
- Turn lock nut (C) down to washer (D) and tighten to torque shown. Use two wrenches, one on fitting (B) and other on lock nut (C).
- 8. Check final condition of fitting.

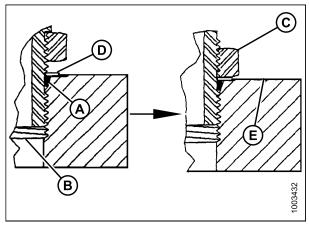


Figure 10.8: Hydraulic Fitting

REFERENCE

| | | Torqu | e Value ⁸ |
|---------------|-------------------|---------|----------------------|
| SAE Dash Size | Thread Size (in.) | Nm | lbf·ft (*lbf·in) |
| -2 | 5/16–24 | 6–7 | *53–62 |
| -3 | 3/8–24 | 12–13 | *106–115 |
| -4 | 7/16–20 | 19–21 | 14–15 |
| -5 | 1/2–20 | 21–33 | 15–24 |
| -6 | 9/16–18 | 26–29 | 19–21 |
| -8 | 3/4–16 | 46–50 | 34–37 |
| -10 | 7/8–14 | 75–82 | 55–60 |
| -12 | 1-1/16–12 | 120–132 | 88–97 |
| -14 | 1-3/8–12 | 153–168 | 113–124 |
| -16 | 1-5/16–12 | 176–193 | 130–142 |
| -20 | 1-5/8–12 | 221–243 | 163–179 |
| -24 | 1-7/8–12 | 270–298 | 199–220 |
| -32 | 2-1/2-12 | 332–365 | 245–269 |

Table 10.7 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Adjustable)

^{8.} Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

10.1.5 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Non-Adjustable)

- 1. Inspect O-ring (A) and seat (B) for dirt or obvious defects.
- 2. Check that O-ring (A) is **NOT** on threads and adjust if necessary.
- 3. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring.
- 4. Install fitting (C) into port until fitting is hand-tight.
- 5. Torque fitting (C) according to values in Table 10.8, page 331.
- 6. Check final condition of fitting.

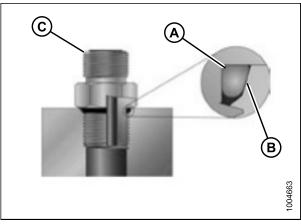


Figure 10.9: Hydraulic Fitting

| SAE Doob Sino | | Torqu | e Value ⁹ |
|---------------|-------------------|---------|----------------------|
| SAE Dash Size | Thread Size (in.) | Nm | lbf∙ft (*lbf∙in) |
| -2 | 5/16–24 | 6–7 | *53–62 |
| -3 | 3/8–24 | 12–13 | *106–115 |
| -4 | 7/16–20 | 19–21 | 14–15 |
| -5 | 1/2–20 | 21–33 | 15–24 |
| -6 | 9/16–18 | 26–29 | 19–21 |
| -8 | 3/4–16 | 46–50 | 34–37 |
| -10 | 7/8–14 | 75–82 | 55–60 |
| -12 | 1-1/16–12 | 120–132 | 88–97 |
| -14 | 1-3/8–12 | 153–168 | 113–124 |
| -16 | 1-5/16–12 | 176–193 | 130–142 |
| -20 | 1-5/8–12 | 221–243 | 163–179 |
| -24 | 1-7/8–12 | 270–298 | 199–220 |
| -32 | 2-1/2–12 | 332–365 | 245–269 |

Table 10.8 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings (Non-Adjustable)

^{9.} Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

REFERENCE

10.1.6 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings

1. Check components to ensure that sealing surfaces and fitting threads are free of burrs, nicks, scratches, or any foreign material.

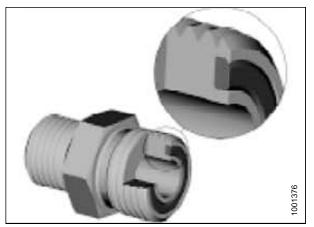


Figure 10.10: Hydraulic Fitting

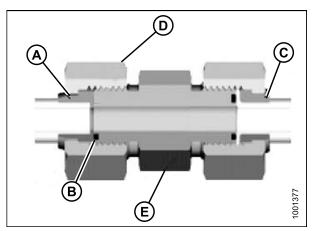


Figure 10.11: Hydraulic Fitting

- 2. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring (B).
- Align tube or hose assembly so that flat face of sleeve (A) or (C) comes in full contact with O-ring (B).
- 4. Thread tube or hose nut (D) until hand-tight. The nut should turn freely until it is bottomed out.
- 5. Torque fittings according to values in Table *10.9, page* 332.

NOTE:

If applicable, hold hex on fitting body (E) to prevent rotation of fitting body and hose when tightening fitting nut (D).

- 6. Use three wrenches when assembling unions or joining two hoses together.
- 7. Check final condition of fitting.

Table 10.9 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings

| SAE Dash Size | Thread Size (in.) | Tube O.D. (in.) | Torque Value ¹⁰ | |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|--------|
| SAE Dasii Size | | | Nm | lbf·ft |
| -3 | Note ¹¹ | 3/16 | _ | - |
| -4 | 9/16 | 1/4 | 25–28 | 18–21 |
| -5 | Note ¹¹ | 5/16 | _ | - |
| -6 | 11/16 | 3/8 | 40–44 | 29–32 |
| -8 | 13/16 | 1/2 | 55–61 | 41–45 |
| -10 | 1 | 5/8 | 80–88 | 59–65 |
| -12 | 1-3/16 | 3/4 | 115–127 | 85–94 |
| -14 | Note ¹¹ | 7/8 | _ | _ |

^{10.} Torque values and angles shown are based on lubricated connection as in reassembly.

^{11.} O-ring face seal type end not defined for this tube size.

REFERENCE

| SAE Dash Size | Thread Size (in.) | | Torque | Value ¹² |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------|---------------------|
| SAE Dasii Size | Thread Size (iii.) | Tube O.D. (in.) | Nm | lbf∙ft |
| -16 | 1-7/16 | 1 | 150–165 | 111–122 |
| -20 | 1-11/16 | 1-1/4 | 205–226 | 151–167 |
| -24 | 1–2 | 1-1/2 | 315–347 | 232–256 |
| -32 | 2-1/2 | 2 | 510–561 | 376–414 |

 Table 10.9
 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings (continued)

10.1.7 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings

Assemble pipe fittings as follows:

- 1. Check components to ensure that fitting and port threads are free of burrs, nicks and scratches, or any form of contamination.
- 2. Apply pipe thread sealant (paste type) to external pipe threads.
- 3. Thread fitting into port until hand-tight.
- 4. Torque connector to appropriate torque angle. The Turns From Finger Tight (TFFT) values are shown in Table *10.10, page 333*. Make sure that tube end of a shaped connector (typically 45 degree or 90 degree) is aligned to receive incoming tube or hose assembly. Always finish alignment of fitting in tightening direction. Never back off (loosen) pipe threaded connectors to achieve alignment.
- 5. Clean all residue and any excess thread conditioner with appropriate cleaner.
- 6. Assess final condition of fitting. Pay special attention to possibility of cracks to port opening.
- 7. Mark final position of fitting. If a fitting leaks, disassemble fitting and check for damage.

NOTE:

Overtorque failure of fittings may not be evident until fittings are disassembled.

Table 10.10 Hydraulic Fitting Pipe Thread

| Tapered Pipe Thread Size | Recommended TFFT | Recommended FFFT |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1/8–27 | 2–3 | 12–18 |
| 1/4–18 | 2–3 | 12–18 |
| 3/8–18 | 2–3 | 12–18 |
| 1/2–14 | 2–3 | 12–18 |
| 3/4–14 | 1.5–2.5 | 12–18 |
| 1–11 1/2 | 1.5–2.5 | 9–15 |
| 1 1/4–11 1/2 | 1.5–2.5 | 9–15 |
| 1 1/2–11 1/2 | 1.5–2.5 | 9–15 |
| 2–11 1/2 | 1.5–2.5 | 9–15 |

^{12.} Torque values and angles shown are based on lubricated connection as in reassembly.

10.2 Lifting Equipment Requirements

The following topic describes the minimum equipment requirements for lifting headers.

To avoid injury to bystanders from being struck by machinery, do not allow people to stand in unloading area.

Equipment used for loading and unloading must meet or exceed the minimum specified requirements. Using inadequate equipment may result in vehicle tipping, machine damage, or chain breakage.

NOTE:

When a header and float module are ordered together, they are shipped with the float module already installed in the header.

IMPORTANT:

Forklifts are normally rated for a load center 610 mm (24 in.) ahead of back end of the forks. To obtain the forklift capacity for a load center (A) at 1220 mm (48 in.) (B), check with your forklift distributor. The minimum fork length (C) is 1981 mm (78 in.).

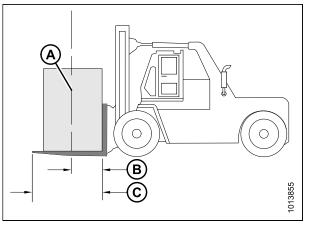


Figure 10.12: Minimum Lifting Capacity

A - Load Center of Gravity

B - Load Center 1220 mm (48 in.) from Back of Forks

C - Minimum Fork Length 1981 mm (78 in.)

Table 10.11 Lifting Chain Requirements

| Туре | Overhead lifting quality (1/2 in.) | |
|--------------|------------------------------------|--|
| Minimum Load | 2270 kg (5000 lb.) | |

10.3 Conversion Chart

Table 10.12 Conversion Chart

| Quantity | SI Units (Metric) | | Factor | US Customary Units (Standard) | |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|
| | Unit Name | Abbreviation | | Unit Name | Abbreviation |
| Area | hectare | ha | x 2.4710 = | acre | acres |
| Flow | liters per minute | L/min | x 0.2642 = | US gallons per minute | gpm |
| Force | Newton | N | x 0.2248 = | pound force | lbf |
| Length | millimeter | mm | x 0.0394 = | inch | in. |
| Length | meter | m | x 3.2808 = | foot | ft. |
| Power | kilowatt | kW | x 1.341 = | horsepower | hp |
| Pressure | kilopascal | kPa | x 0.145 = | pounds per square inch | psi |
| Pressure | megapascal | MPa | x 145.038 = | pounds per square inch | psi |
| Pressure | bar (Non-SI) | bar | x 14.5038 = | pounds per square inch | psi |
| Torque | Newton meter | Nm | x 0.7376 = | pound feet or foot pounds | lbf·ft |
| Torque | Newton meter | Nm | x 8.8507 = | pound inches or inch pounds | lbf∙in |
| Temperature | degrees Celsius | °C | (°C x 1.8) + 32 = | degrees Fahrenheit | °F |
| Velocity | meters per minute | m/min | x 3.2808 = | feet per minute | ft/min |
| Velocity | meters per second | m/s | x 3.2808 = | feet per second | ft/s |
| Velocity | kilometers per hour | km/h | x 0.6214 = | miles per hour | mph |
| Volume | liter | L | x 0.2642 = | US gallon | US gal |
| Volume | milliliter | ml | x 0.0338 = | ounce | OZ. |
| Volume | cubic centimeter | cm ³ or cc | x 0.061 = | cubic inch | in. ³ |
| Weight | kilogram | kg | x 2.2046 = | pound | lb. |

10.4 Definitions

The following terms and acronyms may be used in this instruction:

| Term | Definition |
|-------------------|---|
| AHHC | Automatic Header Height Control |
| API | American Petroleum Institute |
| ASTM | American Society of Testing and Materials |
| Bolt | A headed and externally threaded fastener that is designed to be paired with a nut |
| Center-link | A hydraulic cylinder link between header and machine used to change header angle |
| CGVW | Combined gross vehicle weight |
| D1 Series header | MacDon D120, D125, D130, D135, D140, and D145 combine draper header from D1 model number series |
| DDD | Double-draper drive |
| DK | Double knife |
| DKD | Double-knife drive |
| DR | Double reel |
| FD1 Series header | MacDon FD130, FD135, FD140, or FD145 combine FlexDraper [®] header from the FD1 Series model number series |
| FFFT | Flats from finger tight |
| Finger tight | Finger tight is a reference position where sealing surfaces or components are making contact with each other, and fitting has been tightened to a point where fitting is no longer loose |
| GVW | Gross vehicle weight |
| Hard joint | A joint made with use of a fastener where joining materials are highly incompressible |
| Header | A machine that cuts crop and feeds it into an attached combine |
| Hex key | A tool of hexagonal cross-section used to drive bolts and screws that have a hexagonal socket in head (internal-wrenching hexagon drive); also known as an Allen key and various other synonyms |
| HDS | Hydraulic deck shift |
| hp | Horsepower |
| JIC | Joint Industrial Council: A standards body that developed standard sizing and shape for original 37° flared fitting |
| Knife | A cutting device which uses a reciprocating cutter (also called a sickle) |
| MDS | Mechanical deck shift |
| n/a | Not applicable |
| NPT | National Pipe Thread: A style of fitting used for low-pressure port openings. Threads on NPT fittings are uniquely tapered for an interference fit |
| Nut | An internally threaded fastener that is designed to be paired with a bolt |

| Term | Definition |
|---|--|
| ORB | O-ring boss: A style of fitting commonly used in port openings on manifolds, pumps, and motors |
| ORFS | O-ring face seal: A style of fitting commonly used for connecting hoses and tubes. This style of fitting is also commonly called ORS, which stands for O-ring seal |
| RoHS (Reduction of Hazardous Substances) | A directive by the European Union to restrict use of certain hazardous substances (such as hexavalent chromium used in some yellow zinc platings) |
| rpm | Revolutions per minute |
| SAE | Society of Automotive Engineers |
| Screw | A headed and externally threaded fastener that threads into preformed threads or forms its own thread into a mating part |
| SDD | Single-draper drive |
| Soft joint | A joint made with use of a fastener where joining materials are compressible or experience relaxation over a period of time |
| spm | Strokes per minute |
| Tension | Axial load placed on a bolt or screw, usually measured in Newtons (N) or pounds (Ib.) |
| TFFT | Turns from finger tight |
| Torque | The product of a force X lever arm length, usually measured in Newton-meters (Nm) or foot-pounds (lbf·ft) |
| Torque angle | A tightening procedure where fitting is assembled to a precondition (finger tight) and then nut is turned farther a number of degrees to achieve its final position |
| Torque-tension | The relationship between assembly torque applied to a piece of hardware and axial load it induces in bolt or screw |
| Truck | A four-wheel highway/road vehicle weighing no less than 3400 kg (7500 lb.) |
| UCA | Upper cross auger |
| Untimed knife drive | Unsynchronized motion applied at cutterbar to two separately driven knives from a single hydraulic motor or two hydraulic motors |
| Washer | A thin cylinder with a hole or slot located in the center that is to be used as a spacer, load distribution element, or locking mechanism |

Predelivery Checklist

Perform these checks and adjustments prior to delivery to your Customer. Adjustments are normally not required as the machine is factory-assembled and adjusted. If adjustments are required, refer to the appropriate page number in this manual. The completed checklist should be retained by either the Operator or the Dealer.

Carefully follow the instructions given. Be alert for safety related messages that bring your attention to hazards and unsafe practices.

| Header Serial Number: | Float Module Serial Number: |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| | |

Table .13 FD1 Series FlexDraper® / FM100 Float Module Predelivery Checklist – North America Image: Control of the series of the serie

| ✓ | Item | Reference | |
|---|--|---|--|
| | Check for shipping damage or missing parts. Be sure all shipping dunnage is removed. | _ | |
| | Check for loose hardware. Tighten to required torque. | 10.1 Torque Specifications, page 325 | |
| | Check tire pressure (Transport/Stabilizer Option). | 6.2 Checking Tire Pressure: Transport and Stabilizer Wheels, page 107 | |
| | Check wheel bolt torque (Transport/Stabilizer Option). | 6.3 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque, page 108 | |
| | Check knife drive box breather position. | 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box, page 109 | |
| | Check knife drive box oil level. | 6.4 Checking Knife Drive Box, page 109 | |
| | Check float module gearbox oil level. | 6.5 Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Gearbox, page 111 | |
| | Check hydraulic reservoir oil level before and after run-up. | 6.6 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 112 | |
| | Check knife drive belt(s) tension. | 6.7 Checking Knife Drive Belt Tension, page 113 | |
| | Check if reel is centered between header endsheets (with header in full smile). | 6.9 Centering Reel, page 116 | |
| | Grease all bearings and drivelines. | 6.16 Lubricating the Header, page 142 | |
| | Check side draper tension. | 6.14 Adjusting Draper Tension, page 138 | |
| | Check draper seal. | 6.15 Checking Draper Seal, page 140 | |
| | Check header float. | 6.10 Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 117 | |
| | Check wing balance. | 6.11.1 Checking Wing Balance, page 122 | |
| | Check reel tine to cutterbar clearance. | 6.12.1 Measuring Reel Clearance, page 131 | |
| | Check auger flighting to feed pan clearance. | 6.13 Adjusting Auger to Pan Clearance, page 135 | |
| | Check the knife hold-down adjustment. | 6.8 Checking Pointed Guard Hold-Downs, page 114 | |

| ✓ | Item | Reference | | |
|----|---|--|--|--|
| | Check fitment of endshields. | 6.17 Checking and Adjusting Endshields, page 149 | | |
| | Check skid shoes are evenly adjusted at a setting appropriate for first crop. | _ | | |
| | Ensure feeder house variable speed is set to minimum. | — | | |
| | Ensure auto header height is calibrated and functioning correctly. | 7.1 Auto Header Height Control (AHHC), page 155 | | |
| Ru | n-up procedure | 9 Running up Header, page 317 | | |
| | Check hydraulic hose and wiring harness routing for clearance when raising or lowering header and reel. | — | | |
| | Check lights are functional. | - | | |
| | Check knife speed. | 9.1.2 Adjusting Knife Speed, page 321 | | |
| Ро | st run-up check. Stop engine. | 9.1 Performing Post Run-Up Adjustments, page 319 | | |
| | Check knife sections for discoloration caused by misalignment of components. | 9.1.1 Adjusting Knife, page 320 | | |
| | Check for hydraulic leaks. | - | | |
| | Check that the manual storage case contains all of the required manuals. | 6.18 Checking Manuals, page 153 | | |

| Table .13 | FD1 Series FlexDraper® | / FM100 Float Module | Predelivery Checklist – | North America (continued) |
|-----------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
|-----------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|

Date Checked:

Checked by:

MacDon

MacDon Industries Ltd.

680 Moray Street Winnipeg, Manitoba Canada R3J 3S3 t. (204) 885-5590 f. (204) 832-7749

MacDon, Inc.

10708 N. Pomona Avenue Kansas City, Missouri United States 64153-1924 t. (816) 891-7313 f. (816) 891-7323

MacDon Australia Pty. Ltd. A.C.N. 079 393 721 P.O. Box 103 Somerton, Victoria, Australia Australia 3061 t.+61 3 8301 1911 f.+61 3 8301 1912

MacDon Brasil Agribusiness Ltda.

Rua Grã Nicco, 113, sala 202, B. 02 Mossunguê, Curitiba, Paraná CEP 81200-200 Brasil t. +55 (41) 2101-1713 f. +55 (41) 2101-1699

LLC MacDon Russia Ltd.

123317 Moscow, Russia 10 Presnenskaya nab, Block C Floor 5, Office No. 534, Regus Business Centre t. +7 495 775 6971 f. +7 495 967 7600

MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Strasse 59 65203 Wiesbaden Germany

CUSTOMERS MacDon.com

DEALERS Portal.MacDon.com

Trademarks of products are the marks of their respective manufacturers and/or distributors.

Printed in Canada